



# **MG3000 series Online Manual**

Overview  
Printing  
Scanning  
Frequently Asked Questions

## Contents

Using This Online Manual. . . . .	8
Trademarks and Licenses. . . . .	9
Basic Operation. . . . .	18
Printing Photos from a Computer. . . . .	19
Copying. . . . .	22
Handling Paper, Originals, FINE Cartridges, etc.. . . . .	24
Loading Paper. . . . .	25
Loading Plain Paper / Photo Paper. . . . .	26
Loading Envelopes. . . . .	29
Loading Originals. . . . .	32
Loading Originals on the Platen Glass. . . . .	33
Supported Originals. . . . .	35
Replacing a FINE Cartridge. . . . .	36
Replacing a FINE Cartridge. . . . .	37
Checking the Ink Status with the Ink Lamps on the Operation Panel. . . . .	43
Maintenance. . . . .	44
If Printing Is Faint or Uneven. . . . .	45
Maintenance Procedure. . . . .	46
Printing the Nozzle Check Pattern. . . . .	49
Examining the Nozzle Check Pattern. . . . .	50
Cleaning the Print Head. . . . .	51
Deep Print Head Cleaning. . . . .	52
Aligning the Print Head. . . . .	53
Cleaning. . . . .	56
Cleaning Paper Feed Rollers. . . . .	57
Cleaning Inside the Printer (Bottom Plate Cleaning). . . . .	58
Overview. . . . .	60
Safety. . . . .	62
Safety Precautions. . . . .	63
Regulatory Information. . . . .	64

WEEE (EU&EEA) .....	66
<b>Main Components and Their Use .....</b>	<b>76</b>
Main Components .....	77
Front View .....	78
Rear View .....	80
Inside View .....	81
Operation Panel .....	82
Power Supply .....	84
Confirming that the Power Is On .....	85
Turning the Printer On and Off .....	86
Checking the Power Plug/Power Cord .....	88
Unplugging the Printer .....	89
<b>Changing Settings .....</b>	<b>90</b>
Changing Printer Settings from Your Computer (Windows) .....	91
Changing the Print Options .....	92
Registering a Frequently Used Printing Profile .....	93
Setting the Ink Cartridge to be Used .....	95
Managing the Printer Power .....	96
Changing the Printer Operation Mode .....	98
Changing Settings from Operation Panel .....	100
Turning on/off Printer Automatically .....	101
Initializing Printer Settings .....	102
Switching/Disabling Wireless Connection Function .....	103
<b>Network Connection .....</b>	<b>104</b>
Network Connection Tips .....	105
Default Network Settings .....	106
Another Printer Found with Same Name .....	107
Connecting to Another Computer via LAN/Changing from USB to LAN Connection .....	108
Printing Network Settings .....	109
Changing Wireless LAN Connection Method .....	113
<b>Ensuring Optimal Printing Results .....</b>	<b>114</b>
Transporting Your Printer .....	115
<b>Legal Restrictions on Scanning/Copying .....</b>	<b>116</b>
<b>Specifications .....</b>	<b>117</b>

Information about Paper. . . . .	121
Supported Media Types. . . . .	122
Paper Load Limit. . . . .	124
Unsupported Media Types. . . . .	125
Handling Paper. . . . .	126
Printing from Computer. . . . .	127
Printing from Application Software (Windows Printer Driver). . . . .	128
Basic Printing Setup. . . . .	129
Paper Settings on the Printer Driver. . . . .	131
Various Printing Methods. . . . .	132
Setting a Page Size and Orientation. . . . .	133
Setting the Number of Copies and Printing Order. . . . .	134
Scaled Printing. . . . .	136
Page Layout Printing. . . . .	139
Tiling/Poster Printing. . . . .	141
Duplex Printing. . . . .	144
Setting Up Envelope Printing. . . . .	146
Setting the Print Quality Level (Custom). . . . .	148
Overview of the Printer Driver. . . . .	150
Canon IJ Printer Driver. . . . .	151
Instructions for Use (Printer Driver). . . . .	154
Printer Driver Description. . . . .	156
Quick Setup tab Description. . . . .	157
Main tab Description. . . . .	163
Page Setup tab Description. . . . .	169
Maintenance tab Description. . . . .	181
Canon IJ Status Monitor Screen. . . . .	188
Installing the MP Drivers. . . . .	191
Printing Directly from Smartphone/Tablet. . . . .	192
Using Printer with Wireless Direct. . . . .	193
Making Copies on Plain Paper. . . . .	196
Switching Page Size between A4 and Letter. . . . .	198
Scanning from Computer (Windows). . . . .	199

Using IJ Scan Utility . . . . .	200
What Is IJ Scan Utility (Scanner Software)? . . . . .	201
Starting IJ Scan Utility. . . . .	203
Using Auto Scan Function. . . . .	204
IJ Scan Utility Screens. . . . .	205
IJ Scan Utility Main Screen. . . . .	206
Settings Dialog Box. . . . .	208
Scanning Using Application Software (ScanGear). . . . .	221
What Is ScanGear (Scanner Driver)? . . . . .	222
Starting ScanGear (Scanner Driver). . . . .	224
Scanning in Basic Mode. . . . .	225
ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screens. . . . .	228
Basic Mode Tab. . . . .	229
Advanced Mode Tab. . . . .	237
General Notes (Scanner Driver). . . . .	243
Positioning Originals (Scanning from Computer). . . . .	245
Network Scan Settings. . . . .	247
<b>Frequently Asked Questions. . . . .</b>	<b>250</b>
<b>Network Settings and Common Problems. . . . .</b>	<b>252</b>
<b>Connecting the Printer to a Network. . . . .</b>	<b>254</b>
<b>Restrictions. . . . .</b>	<b>256</b>
<b>Network Communication Problems. . . . .</b>	<b>258</b>
Cannot Find Printer on Network. . . . .	259
Cannot Find Printer on Check Printer Settings Screen During Setup (Windows). . . . .	260
Cannot Find Printer on Check Printer Settings Screen During Wireless LAN Setup (Windows)- Checking Power Status. . . . .	261
Cannot Find Printer on Check Printer Settings Screen During Wireless LAN Setup (Windows)- Checking PC Network Connection. . . . .	262
Cannot Find Printer on Check Printer Settings Screen During Wireless LAN Setup (Windows)- Checking Wireless LAN Environment. . . . .	263
Cannot Find Printer on Check Printer Settings Screen During Wireless LAN Setup (Windows)- Checking Security Software Settings. . . . .	264
Cannot Find Printer on Check Printer Settings Screen During Wireless LAN Setup (Windows)- Checking Wireless Router Settings. . . . .	265
Cannot Proceed beyond Printer Connection Screen/Connect Cable Screen. . . . .	266

Cannot Find Printer while Using Wireless LAN. . . . .	268
Network Connection Problems. . . . .	271
Printer Suddenly Cannot Be Used. . . . .	272
Network Key Unknown. . . . .	276
Printer Cannot Be Used After Replacing Wireless Router or Changing Its Settings. . . . .	278
Other Network Problems. . . . .	280
Checking Network Information. . . . .	281
Restoring to Factory Defaults. . . . .	284
Printing Problems. . . . .	285
Printing Does Not Start. . . . .	286
No Ink Comes Out. . . . .	288
Paper Does Not Feed Properly/"No Paper" Error. . . . .	289
Print Results Are Unsatisfactory. . . . .	291
Paper Is Blank/Printing Is Blurry/Colors Are Wrong/White Streaks Appear. . . . .	293
Colors Are Unclear. . . . .	296
Lines Are Misaligned. . . . .	297
Paper Is Smudged / Printed Surface Is Scratched. . . . .	298
Scanning Problems (Windows). . . . .	301
Scanning Problems. . . . .	302
Scanner Does Not Work. . . . .	303
ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Does Not Start. . . . .	304
Mechanical Problems. . . . .	305
Power Does Not Come On. . . . .	306
Power Shuts Off By Itself. . . . .	307
USB Connection Problems. . . . .	308
Cannot Communicate with Printer via USB. . . . .	309
Installation and Download Problems. . . . .	310
Cannot Install MP Drivers. . . . .	311
Updating MP Drivers in Network Environment (Windows). . . . .	313
Errors and Messages. . . . .	314
An Error Occurs. . . . .	315
Message Appears. . . . .	319
List of Support Code for Error. . . . .	325

List of Support Code for Error (Paper Jams) . . . . . 326

    1300. . . . . 327

    Paper Is Jammed inside Printer. . . . . 328

1000. . . . . 331

1200. . . . . 332

1203. . . . . 333

1401. . . . . 334

1485. . . . . 335

1682. . . . . 336

1686. . . . . 337

1688. . . . . 338

168A. . . . . 339

1700. . . . . 340

1890. . . . . 341

2900. . . . . 342

2901. . . . . 343

4102. . . . . 344

4103. . . . . 345

5011. . . . . 346

5012. . . . . 347

5100. . . . . 348

5200. . . . . 349

5B00. . . . . 350

6000. . . . . 351

# Using This Online Manual

- [Symbols Used in This Document](#)
- [Touch-enabled Device Users \(Windows\)](#)

## Symbols Used in This Document

### **Warning**

Instructions that, if ignored, could result in death or serious personal injury caused by incorrect operation of the equipment. These must be observed for safe operation.

### **Caution**

Instructions that, if ignored, could result in personal injury or material damage caused by incorrect operation of the equipment. These must be observed for safe operation.

### **Important**

Instructions including important information. To avoid damage and injury or improper use of the product, be sure to read these indications.

### **Note**

Instructions including notes for operation and additional explanations.

### **Basics**

Instructions explaining basic operations of your product.

### **Note**

- 
- Icons may vary depending on your product.
- 

## Touch-enabled Device Users (Windows)

For touch actions, you need to replace "right-click" in this document with the action set on the operating system. For example, if the action is set to "press and hold" on your operating system, replace "right-click" with "press and hold."



## Trademarks and Licenses

- Microsoft is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation.
- Windows is a trademark or registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries.
- Windows Vista is a trademark or registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries.
- Internet Explorer is a trademark or registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries.
- Mac, Mac OS, AirPort, Safari, Bonjour, iPad, iPhone and iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. App Store, AirPrint and the AirPrint logo are trademarks of Apple Inc.
- IOS is a trademark or registered trademark of Cisco in the U.S. and other countries and is used under license.
- Google Cloud Print, Google Chrome, Chrome OS, Chromebook, Android, Google Play, Google Drive, Google Apps and Google Analytics are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Google Inc.
- Adobe, Flash, Photoshop, Photoshop Elements, Lightroom, Adobe RGB and Adobe RGB (1998) are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
- Bluetooth is a trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc., U.S.A. and licensed to Canon Inc.
- Autodesk and AutoCAD are registered trademarks or trademarks of Autodesk, Inc., and/or its subsidiaries and/or affiliates in the USA and/or other countries.

### »» Note

- The formal name of Windows Vista is Microsoft Windows Vista operating system.

Copyright (c) 2003-2004, Apple Computer, Inc. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of Apple Computer, Inc. ("Apple") nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY APPLE AND ITS CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL APPLE OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

## Apache License

Version 2.0, January 2004

<http://www.apache.org/licenses/>

### TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR USE, REPRODUCTION, AND DISTRIBUTION

#### 1. Definitions.

"License" shall mean the terms and conditions for use, reproduction, and distribution as defined by Sections 1 through 9 of this document.

"Licensor" shall mean the copyright owner or entity authorized by the copyright owner that is granting the License.

"Legal Entity" shall mean the union of the acting entity and all other entities that control, are controlled by, or are under common control with that entity. For the purposes of this definition, "control" means (i) the power, direct or indirect, to cause the direction or management of such entity, whether by contract or otherwise, or (ii) ownership of fifty percent (50%) or more of the outstanding shares, or (iii) beneficial ownership of such entity.

"You" (or "Your") shall mean an individual or Legal Entity exercising permissions granted by this License.

"Source" form shall mean the preferred form for making modifications, including but not limited to software source code, documentation source, and configuration files.

"Object" form shall mean any form resulting from mechanical transformation or translation of a Source form, including but not limited to compiled object code, generated documentation, and conversions to other media types.

"Work" shall mean the work of authorship, whether in Source or Object form, made available under the License, as indicated by a copyright notice that is included in or attached to the work (an example is provided in the Appendix below).

"Derivative Works" shall mean any work, whether in Source or Object form, that is based on (or derived from) the Work and for which the editorial revisions, annotations, elaborations, or other modifications represent, as a whole, an original work of authorship. For the purposes of this License, Derivative Works shall not include works that remain separable from, or merely link (or bind by name) to the interfaces of, the Work and Derivative Works thereof.

"Contribution" shall mean any work of authorship, including the original version of the Work and any modifications or additions to that Work or Derivative Works thereof, that is intentionally submitted to Licensor for inclusion in the Work by the copyright owner or by an individual or Legal Entity authorized to submit on behalf of the copyright owner. For the purposes of this definition, "submitted" means any form of electronic, verbal, or written communication sent to the Licensor or its representatives, including but not limited to communication on electronic mailing lists, source code control systems, and issue tracking systems that are managed by, or on behalf of, the Licensor for the purpose of discussing and improving the Work, but excluding communication that is conspicuously marked or otherwise designated in writing by the copyright owner as "Not a Contribution."

"Contributor" shall mean Licensor and any individual or Legal Entity on behalf of whom a Contribution has been received by Licensor and subsequently incorporated within the Work.

2. Grant of Copyright License. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, each Contributor hereby grants to You a perpetual, worldwide, non-exclusive, no-charge, royalty-free, irrevocable

copyright license to reproduce, prepare Derivative Works of, publicly display, publicly perform, sublicense, and distribute the Work and such Derivative Works in Source or Object form.

3. Grant of Patent License. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, each Contributor hereby grants to You a perpetual, worldwide, non-exclusive, no-charge, royalty-free, irrevocable (except as stated in this section) patent license to make, have made, use, offer to sell, sell, import, and otherwise transfer the Work, where such license applies only to those patent claims licensable by such Contributor that are necessarily infringed by their Contribution(s) alone or by combination of their Contribution(s) with the Work to which such Contribution(s) was submitted. If You institute patent litigation against any entity (including a cross-claim or counterclaim in a lawsuit) alleging that the Work or a Contribution incorporated within the Work constitutes direct or contributory patent infringement, then any patent licenses granted to You under this License for that Work shall terminate as of the date such litigation is filed.
4. Redistribution. You may reproduce and distribute copies of the Work or Derivative Works thereof in any medium, with or without modifications, and in Source or Object form, provided that You meet the following conditions:
  1. You must give any other recipients of the Work or Derivative Works a copy of this License; and
  2. You must cause any modified files to carry prominent notices stating that You changed the files; and
  3. You must retain, in the Source form of any Derivative Works that You distribute, all copyright, patent, trademark, and attribution notices from the Source form of the Work, excluding those notices that do not pertain to any part of the Derivative Works; and
  4. If the Work includes a "NOTICE" text file as part of its distribution, then any Derivative Works that You distribute must include a readable copy of the attribution notices contained within such NOTICE file, excluding those notices that do not pertain to any part of the Derivative Works, in at least one of the following places: within a NOTICE text file distributed as part of the Derivative Works; within the Source form or documentation, if provided along with the Derivative Works; or, within a display generated by the Derivative Works, if and wherever such third-party notices normally appear. The contents of the NOTICE file are for informational purposes only and do not modify the License. You may add Your own attribution notices within Derivative Works that You distribute, alongside or as an addendum to the NOTICE text from the Work, provided that such additional attribution notices cannot be construed as modifying the License.

You may add Your own copyright statement to Your modifications and may provide additional or different license terms and conditions for use, reproduction, or distribution of Your modifications, or for any such Derivative Works as a whole, provided Your use, reproduction, and distribution of the Work otherwise complies with the conditions stated in this License.

5. Submission of Contributions. Unless You explicitly state otherwise, any Contribution intentionally submitted for inclusion in the Work by You to the Licensor shall be under the terms and conditions of this License, without any additional terms or conditions. Notwithstanding the above, nothing herein shall supersede or modify the terms of any separate license agreement you may have executed with Licensor regarding such Contributions.
6. Trademarks. This License does not grant permission to use the trade names, trademarks, service marks, or product names of the Licensor, except as required for reasonable and customary use in describing the origin of the Work and reproducing the content of the NOTICE file.
7. Disclaimer of Warranty. Unless required by applicable law or agreed to in writing, Licensor provides the Work (and each Contributor provides its Contributions) on an "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, either express or implied, including, without

limitation, any warranties or conditions of TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY, or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. You are solely responsible for determining the appropriateness of using or redistributing the Work and assume any risks associated with Your exercise of permissions under this License.

8. Limitation of Liability. In no event and under no legal theory, whether in tort (including negligence), contract, or otherwise, unless required by applicable law (such as deliberate and grossly negligent acts) or agreed to in writing, shall any Contributor be liable to You for damages, including any direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages of any character arising as a result of this License or out of the use or inability to use the Work (including but not limited to damages for loss of goodwill, work stoppage, computer failure or malfunction, or any and all other commercial damages or losses), even if such Contributor has been advised of the possibility of such damages.
9. Accepting Warranty or Additional Liability. While redistributing the Work or Derivative Works thereof, You may choose to offer, and charge a fee for, acceptance of support, warranty, indemnity, or other liability obligations and/or rights consistent with this License. However, in accepting such obligations, You may act only on Your own behalf and on Your sole responsibility, not on behalf of any other Contributor, and only if You agree to indemnify, defend, and hold each Contributor harmless for any liability incurred by, or claims asserted against, such Contributor by reason of your accepting any such warranty or additional liability.

END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

---- Part 1: CMU/UCD copyright notice: (BSD like) ----

Copyright 1989, 1991, 1992 by Carnegie Mellon University

Derivative Work - 1996, 1998-2000

Copyright 1996, 1998-2000 The Regents of the University of California

All Rights Reserved

Permission to use, copy, modify and distribute this software and its documentation for any purpose and without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice appears in all copies and that both that copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation, and that the name of CMU and The Regents of the University of California not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the software without specific written permission.

CMU AND THE REGENTS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE, INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL CMU OR THE REGENTS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM THE LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

---- Part 2: Networks Associates Technology, Inc copyright notice (BSD) ----

Copyright (c) 2001-2003, Networks Associates Technology, Inc

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- \* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- \* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- \* Neither the name of the Networks Associates Technology, Inc nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 3: Cambridge Broadband Ltd. copyright notice (BSD) -----

Portions of this code are copyright (c) 2001-2003, Cambridge Broadband Ltd.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- \* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- \* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- \* The name of Cambridge Broadband Ltd. may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER ``AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 4: Sun Microsystems, Inc. copyright notice (BSD) -----

Copyright c 2003 Sun Microsystems, Inc., 4150 Network Circle, Santa Clara, California 95054, U.S.A. All rights reserved.

Use is subject to license terms below.

This distribution may include materials developed by third parties.

Sun, Sun Microsystems, the Sun logo and Solaris are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the U.S. and other countries.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- \* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- \* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- \* Neither the name of the Sun Microsystems, Inc. nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 5: Sparta, Inc copyright notice (BSD) ----

Copyright (c) 2003-2009, Sparta, Inc

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- \* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- \* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- \* Neither the name of Sparta, Inc nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 6: Cisco/BUPTNIC copyright notice (BSD) ----

Copyright (c) 2004, Cisco, Inc and Information Network Center of Beijing University of Posts and Telecommunications.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- \* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- \* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- \* Neither the name of Cisco, Inc, Beijing University of Posts and Telecommunications, nor the names of their contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 7: Fabasoft R&D Software GmbH & Co KG copyright notice (BSD) ----

Copyright (c) Fabasoft R&D Software GmbH & Co KG, 2003 oss@fabasoft.com

Author: Bernhard Penz

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- \* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- \* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- \* The name of Fabasoft R&D Software GmbH & Co KG or any of its subsidiaries, brand or product names may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER ``AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER

IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

## LEADTOOLS

Copyright (C) 1991-2009 LEAD Technologies, Inc.

CMap Resources

---

Copyright 1990-2009 Adobe Systems Incorporated.  
All rights reserved.

Copyright 1990-2010 Adobe Systems Incorporated.  
All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

Neither the name of Adobe Systems Incorporated nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---

MIT License



Copyright (c) 1998, 1999, 2000 Thai Open Source Software Center Ltd

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

The following applies only to products supporting Wi-Fi.

(c) 2009-2013 by Jeff Mott. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- \* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions, and the following disclaimer.
- \* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions, and the following disclaimer in the documentation or other materials provided with the distribution.
- \* Neither the name CryptoJS nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS," AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

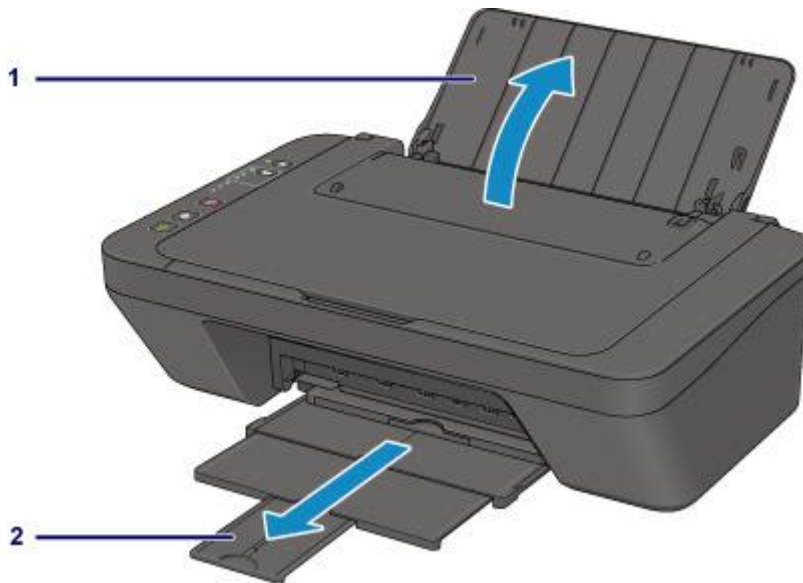
## Basic Operation

- ▶ **Printing Photos from a Computer**
- ▶ **Copying**

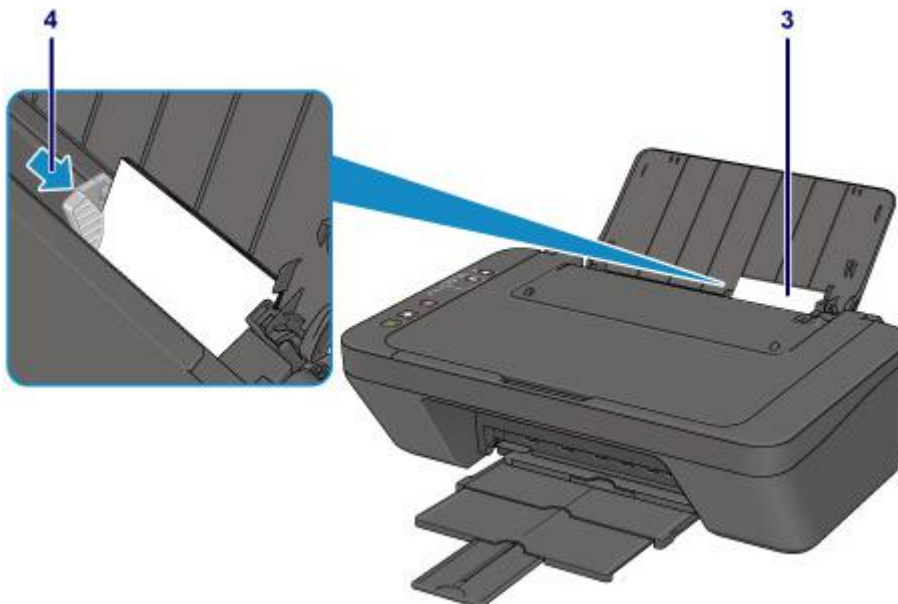
## Printing Photos from a Computer

This section describes how to print photos with My Image Garden.

1. Open the paper support.
2. Pull out the paper output tray and the output tray extension.



3. Load paper vertically WITH THE PRINT SIDE FACING YOU.
4. Adjust the paper guide.



5. Click the My Image Garden icon in Quick Menu.



### ➤➤ Note

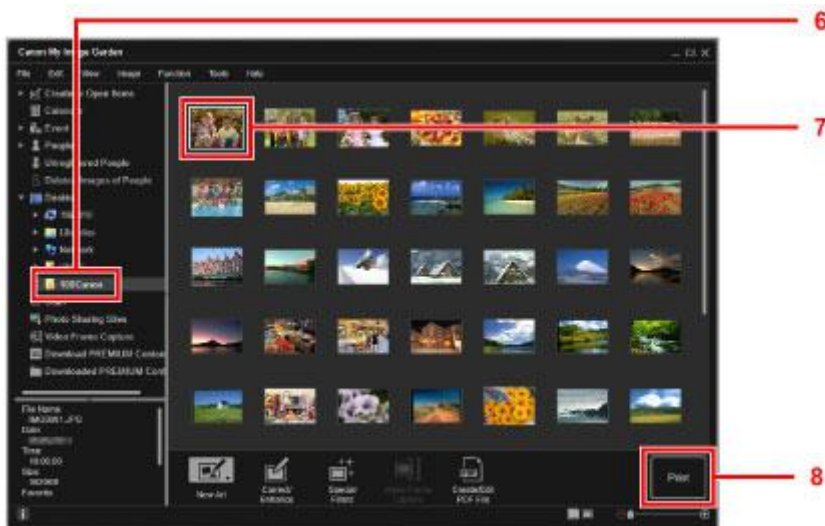
- The number and types of icons displayed vary depending on your region, the registered printer/scanner and the installed applications.

6. Click the folder with photos you want to print.

7. Click the photos you want to print.

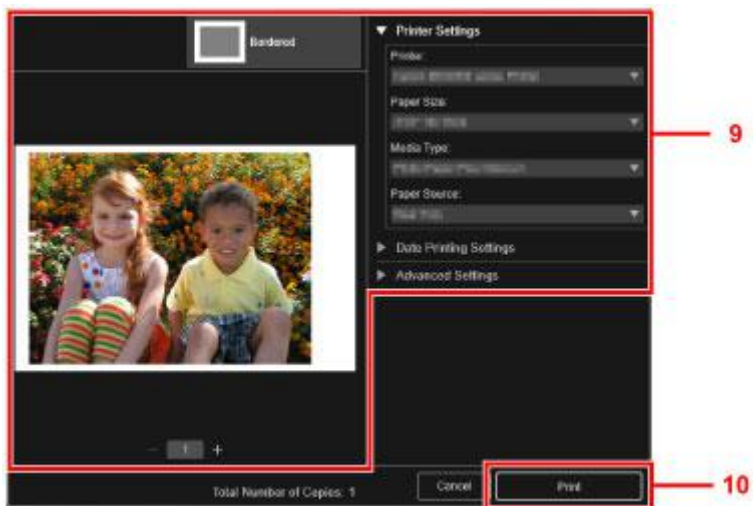
To select two or more photos at a time, click photos while pressing the Ctrl key.

8. Click **Print**.



9. Specify the number of copies, your printer name, media type, etc.

10. Click **Print**.



For Mac OS, click **OK** in the confirmation message and then click **Print**.

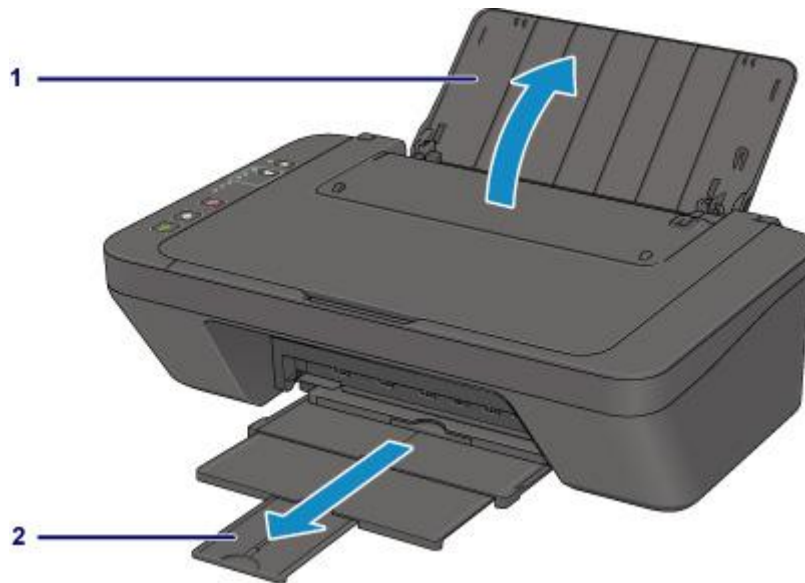
### ►►► Note

- My Image Garden lets you use images on your computer, such as photos taken with a digital camera, in a number of ways.
  - For Windows:
    - My Image Garden Guide
  - For Mac OS:
    - My Image Garden Guide

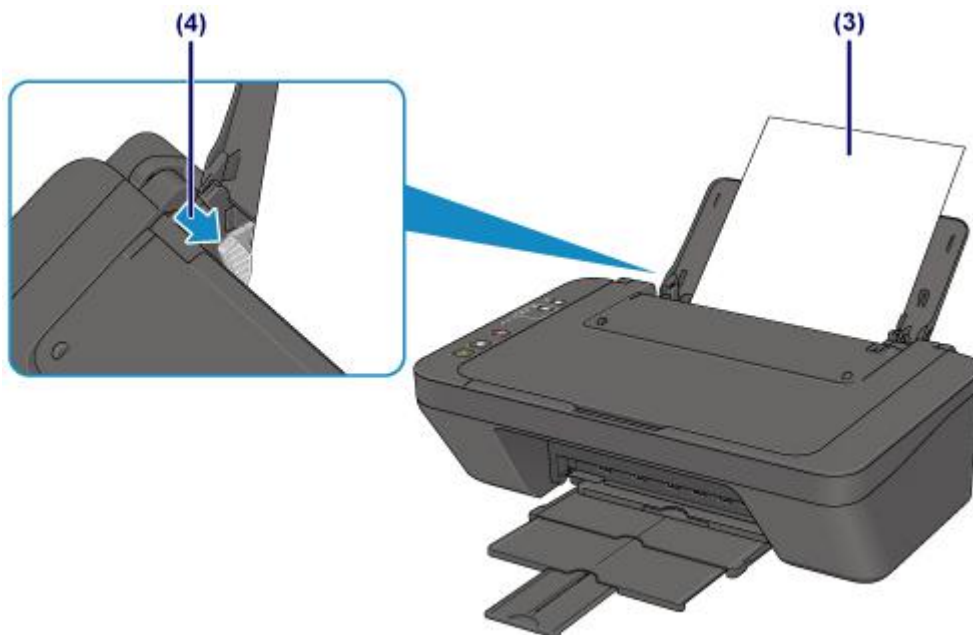
## Copying

This section describes how to load originals and copy them to plain paper.

1. Open the paper support.
2. Pull out the paper output tray and the output tray extension.

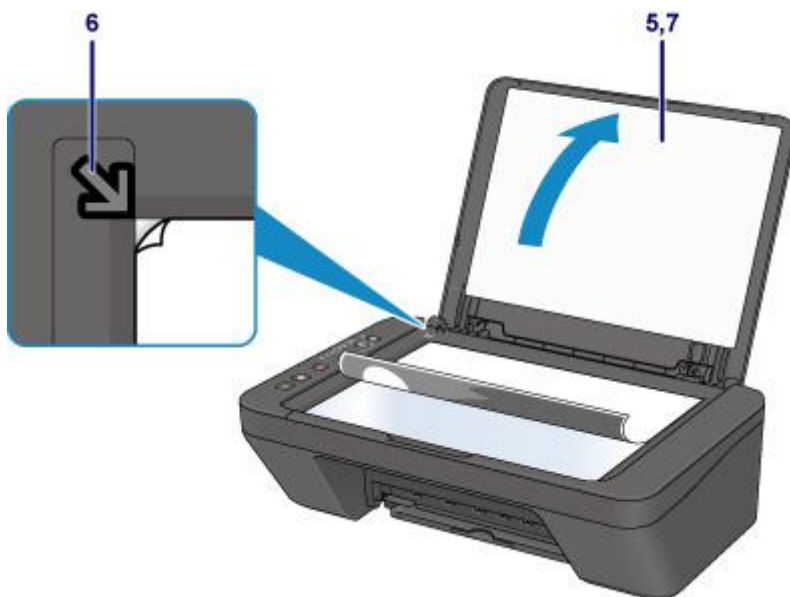


3. Load paper vertically WITH THE PRINT SIDE FACING YOU.
4. Adjust the paper guide.

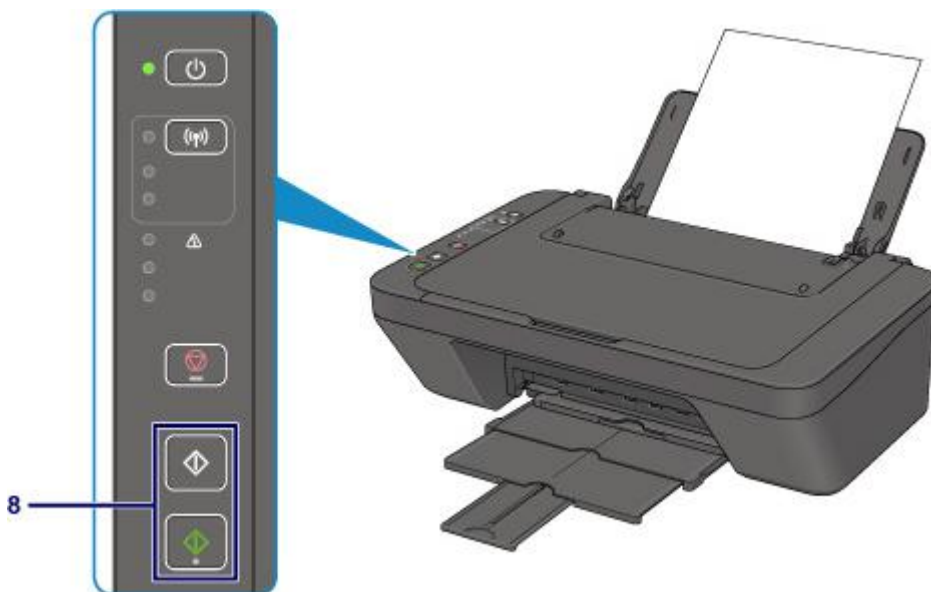


5. Open the document cover.

6. Load the original WITH THE SIDE TO COPY FACING DOWN and align it with the alignment mark.
7. Close the document cover.



8. Press the **Black** button or **Color** button.



### ▶▶▶ Important

- Do not open the document cover until copying is complete.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- Your machine is equipped with many other convenient copy features.

- Copying

## Handling Paper, Originals, FINE Cartridges, etc.

- ▶ **Loading Paper**
- ▶ **Loading Originals**
- ▶ **Replacing a FINE Cartridge**



## **Loading Paper**

- ▶ **Loading Plain Paper / Photo Paper**
- ▶ **Loading Envelopes**

## Loading Plain Paper / Photo Paper

You can load plain paper or photo paper.

### ▶▶▶ Important

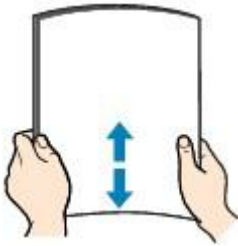
- If you cut plain paper into small size such as 4" x 6" (10 x 15 cm) or 5" x 7" (13 x 18 cm) to perform trial print, it can cause paper jams.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- We recommend Canon genuine photo paper for printing photos.  
For details on the Canon genuine paper, see [Supported Media Types](#).
- You can use general copy paper.  
For the page size and paper weight you can use for this printer, see [Supported Media Types](#).

#### 1. Prepare paper.

Align the edges of paper. If paper is curled, flatten it.

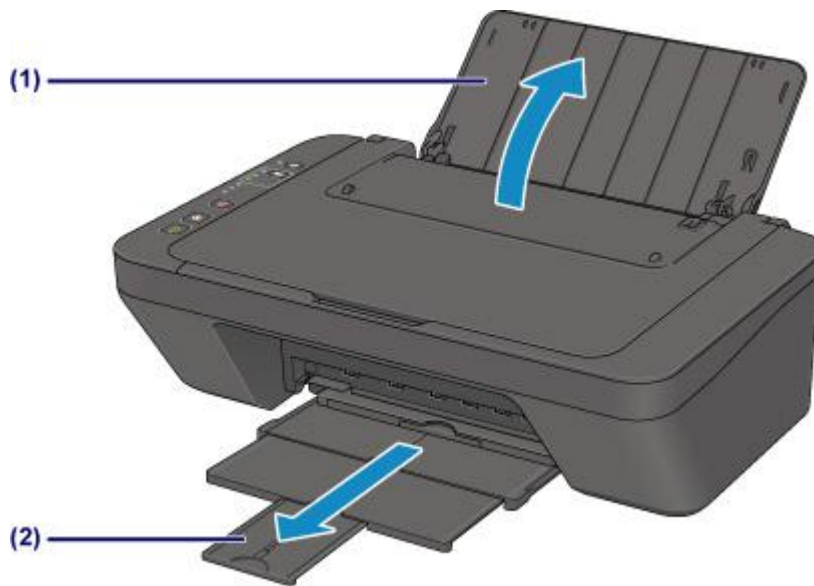


### ▶▶▶ Note

- Align the edges of paper neatly before loading. Loading paper without aligning the edges may cause paper jams.
- If paper is curled, hold the curled corners and gently bend them in the opposite direction until the paper becomes completely flat.  
For details on how to flatten curled paper, see [Is the paper curled?](#)

#### 2. Load paper.

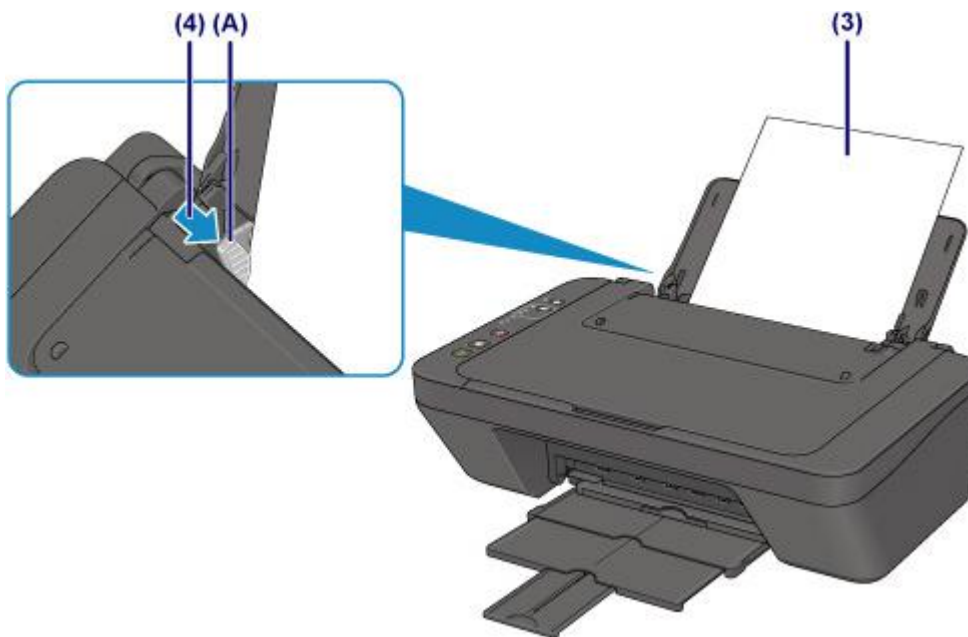
1. Open the paper support.
2. Pull out the paper output tray and the output tray extension.



3. Slide the paper guide (A) to the left, and load the paper against the far right of the rear tray WITH THE PRINT SIDE FACING YOU.

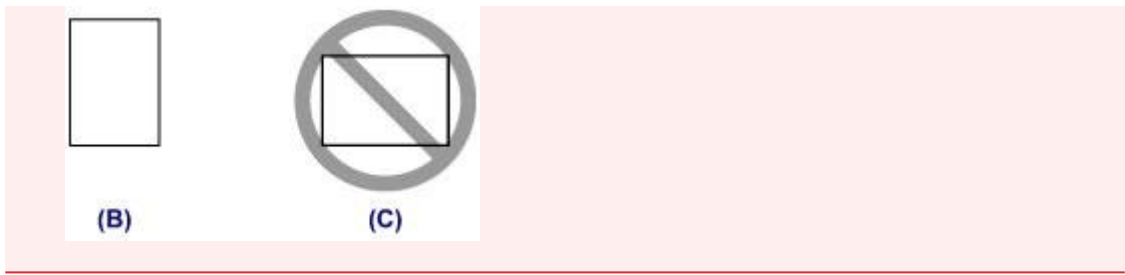
4. Slide the paper guide (A) to align it with the paper stack.

Do not slide the paper guide too hard against the paper. The paper may not be fed properly.



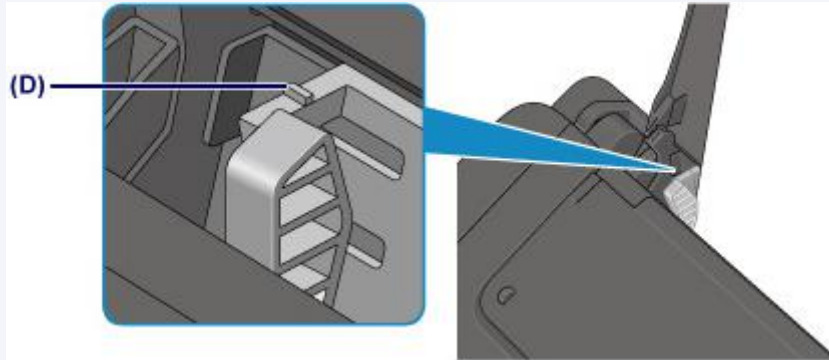
### **»» Important**

- Always load paper in the portrait orientation (B). Loading paper in the landscape orientation (C) can cause paper jams.



▶▶▶ **Note**

- Do not load sheets of paper higher than the load limit mark (D).



▶▶▶ **Note**

- The printer may make operating noise when feeding paper.
- After loading paper, select the size and type of the loaded paper on the print settings screen of the printer driver.

# Loading Envelopes

You can load Envelope DL and Envelope Com 10.

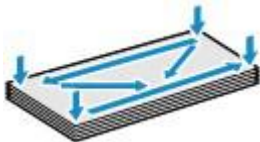
The address is automatically rotated and printed according to the envelope's direction by specifying with the printer driver properly.

## ▶▶ Important

- Printing of envelopes from a digital camera is not supported.
- Do not use the following envelopes. They could jam in the printer or cause the printer to malfunction.
  - Envelopes with an embossed or treated surface
  - Envelopes with a double flap
  - Envelopes whose gummed flaps are already moistened and adhesive

### 1. Prepare envelopes.

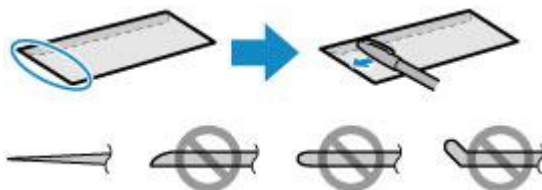
- Press down on all four corners and edges of the envelopes to flatten them.



- If the envelopes are curled, hold the opposite corners and gently twist them in the opposite direction.



- If the corner of the envelope flap is folded, flatten it.
- Use a pen to press the leading edge in the inserting direction flat and sharpen the crease.



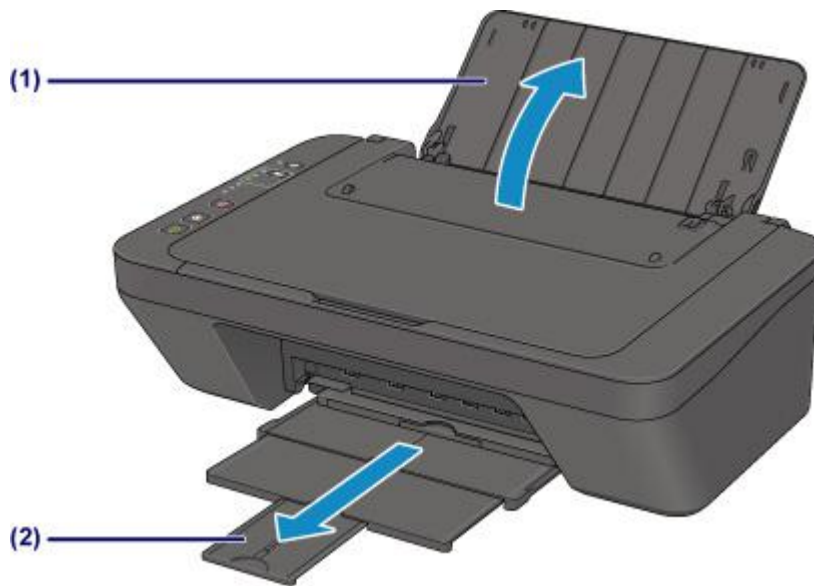
The figures above show a side view of the leading edge of the envelope.

## ▶▶ Important

- The envelopes may jam in the printer if they are not flat or the edges are not aligned. Make sure that no curl or puff exceeds 0.12 inch (3 mm).

### 2. Load envelopes.

1. Open the paper support.
2. Pull out the paper output tray and the output tray extension.

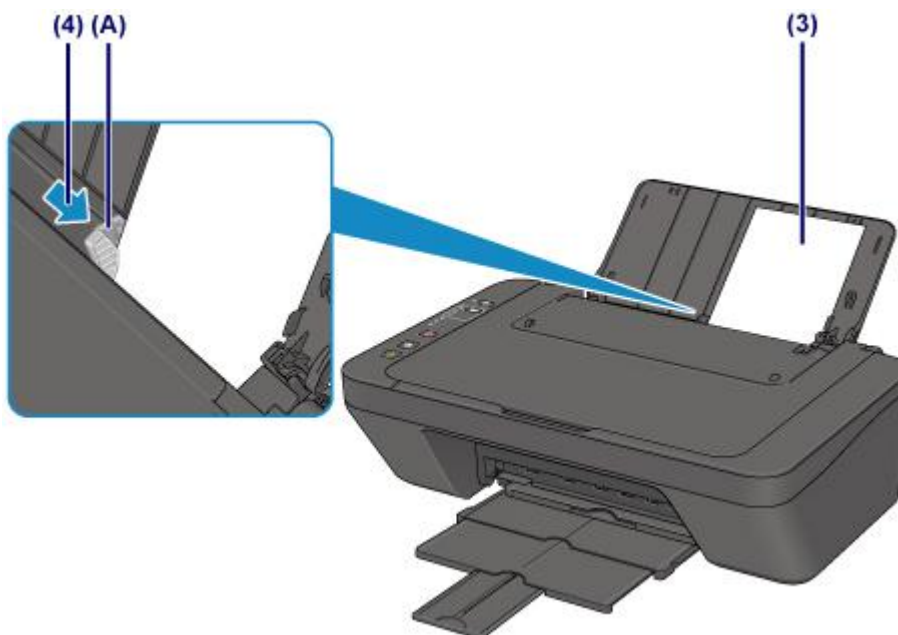


3. Slide the paper guide (A) to the left, and load the envelopes against the far right of the rear tray WITH THE PRINT SIDE FACING YOU.

Fold flap of the envelope and load the envelope in the portrait orientation with the address side facing up. Up to 5 envelopes can be loaded at once.

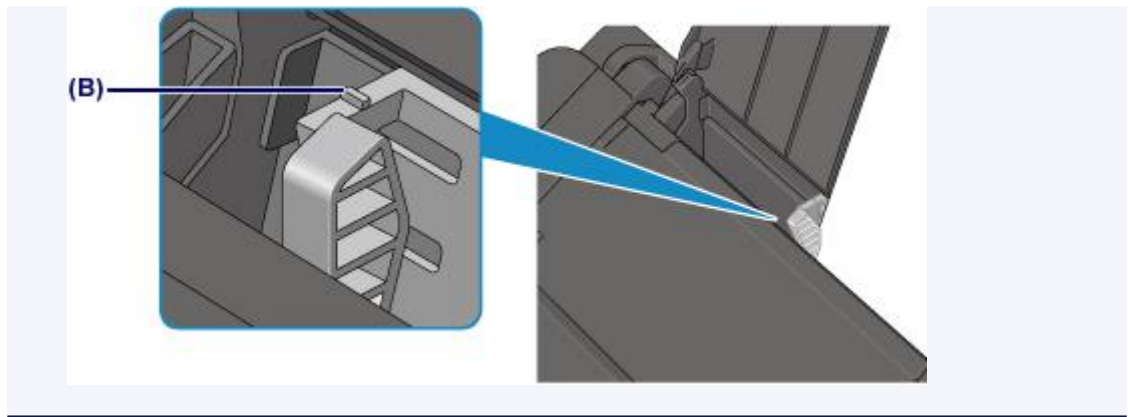
4. Slide the paper guide (A) to align it with the envelopes.

Do not slide the paper guide too hard against the envelopes. The envelopes may not be fed properly.



#### ▶▶▶ Note

- Do not load envelopes higher than the load limit mark (B).



**▶▶ Note**

- The printer may make operating noise when feeding envelopes.
- After loading envelopes, select the size and type of the loaded envelopes on the print settings screen of the printer driver.

## **Loading Originals**

- ▶ **Loading Originals on the Platen Glass**
- ▶ **Supported Originals**



# Loading Originals on the Platen Glass


1. Load an original on the platen glass.

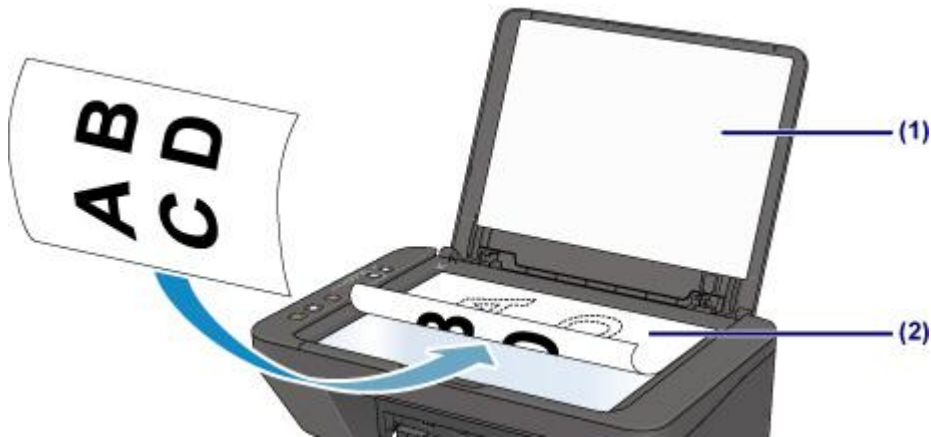
1. Open the document cover.

### Important

- Do not place any object on the document cover. It will fall into the rear tray when the document cover is opened and cause the printer to malfunction.

2. Load the original WITH THE SIDE TO SCAN FACING DOWN on the platen glass.

Align the corner of the original with the alignment mark .

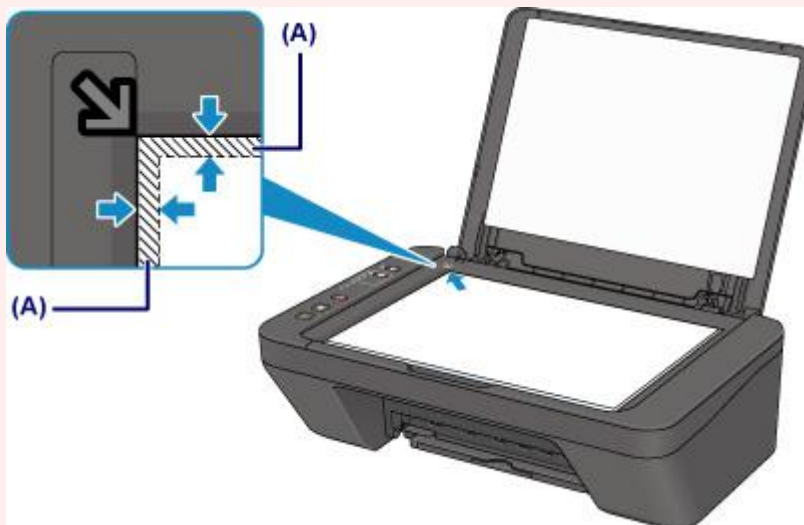


### Important

- Be sure to observe the following when loading the original on the platen glass.
  - Do not place any objects weighing 4.4 lb (2.0 kg) or more on the platen glass.
  - Do not put any pressure of 4.4 lb (2.0 kg) or more on the platen glass, such as pressing down the original.

Failure to observe the above may cause the scanner to malfunction or the platen glass to break.

- The printer cannot scan the striped area (A) (0.04 inch (1 mm) from the edges of the platen glass).



2. Close the document cover gently.



**»» Important**

- After loading the original on the platen glass, be sure to close the document cover before starting to copy or scan.

## Supported Originals

Item	Details
Types of originals	- Text document, magazine, or newspaper - Printed photo, postcard, business card, or disc (BD/DVD/CD, etc.)
Size (width x height)	Max. 8.5 x 11.7 inches (216 x 297 mm)

## Replacing a FINE Cartridge

- [Replacing a FINE Cartridge](#)
- [Checking the Ink Status with the Ink Lamps on the Operation Panel](#)

## Replacing a FINE Cartridge

When remaining ink cautions or errors occur, the ink lamps and the **Alarm** lamp will flash to inform you of the error. In this state, the printer cannot print or scan. Count the number of flashes and take appropriate action.

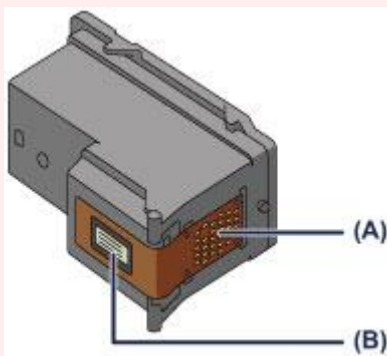
### ■ [An Error Occurs](#)

## Replacing Procedure

When you need to replace a FINE cartridge, follow the procedure below.

### ▶▶▶ Important

- Do not touch the electrical contacts (A) or print head nozzle (B) on a FINE cartridge. The printer may not print properly if you touch them.



- If you remove a FINE cartridge, replace it immediately. Do not leave the printer with the FINE cartridge removed.
- Use a new FINE cartridge for replacement. Installing a used FINE cartridge may cause the nozzles to clog.

Furthermore, with such a FINE cartridge, the printer will not be able to inform you when to replace the FINE cartridge properly.

- Once a FINE cartridge has been installed, do not remove it from the printer and leave it out in the open. This will cause the FINE cartridge to dry out, and the printer may not operate properly when it is reinstalled. To maintain optimal printing quality, use a FINE cartridge within six months of first use.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- If a FINE cartridge runs out of ink, you can print with either color or black FINE cartridge, in whichever ink remains, only for a while. However the print quality may be reduced compared to when printing with both cartridges. We recommend to use a new FINE cartridge in order to obtain optimum qualities.

Even when printing with one ink only, print with leaving the empty FINE cartridge installed. If either of the color FINE cartridge or black FINE cartridge is not installed, an error occurs and the printer cannot print.

For information on how to configure this setting, see below.

- For Windows:

#### ■ [Setting the Ink Cartridge to be Used](#)

- For Mac OS:

#### ■ Setting the Ink Cartridge to be Used

- Color ink may be consumed even when printing a black-and-white document or when black-and-white printing is specified.

Both color ink and black ink are also consumed in the standard cleaning and deep cleaning of the print head, which may be necessary to maintain the performance of the printer. When ink runs out, replace the FINE cartridge immediately with a new one.

#### ■ Ink Tips

1. Make sure that the power is turned on.
2. Retract the paper output tray and the output tray extension.
3. Open the cover.
4. The FINE cartridge holder moves to the replacement position.



#### ⚠ Caution

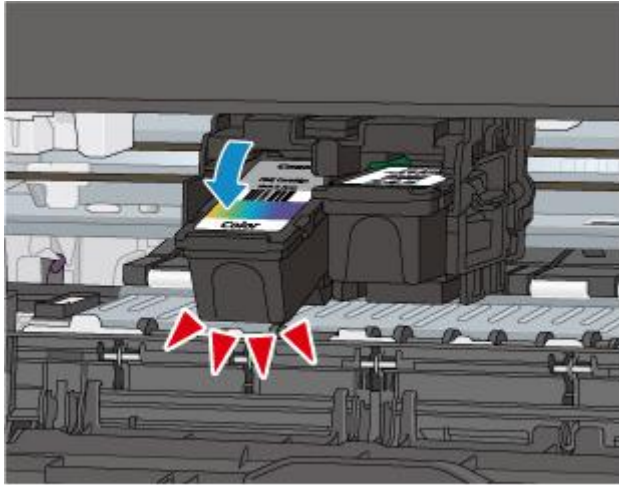
- Do not hold the FINE cartridge holder to stop or move it forcibly. Do not touch the FINE cartridge holder until it stops completely.

#### ➤➤ Important

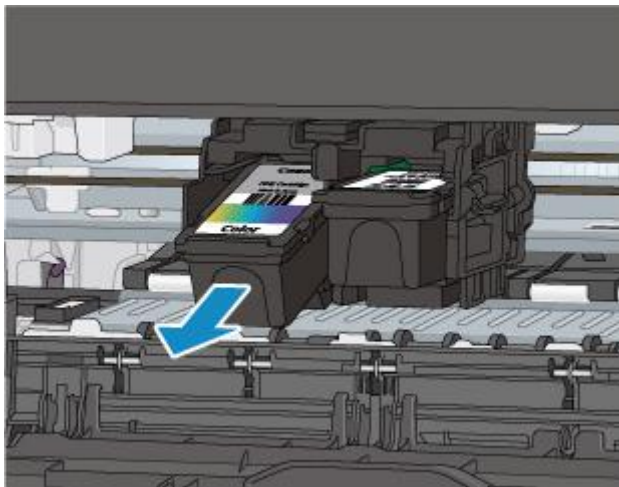
- The inside of the printer may be stained with ink. Be careful not to stain your hands or clothing when replacing the FINE cartridge. You can easily wipe off the ink from the inside of the printer with tissue paper or the like.
- Do not touch the metallic parts or other parts inside the printer.
- If the cover is left open for more than 10 minutes, the FINE cartridge holder may move and the **Alarm** lamp light. In this case, close the cover, then open it again.

5. Remove the empty FINE cartridge.

1. Push down the FINE cartridge until it clicks.



2. Remove the FINE cartridge.

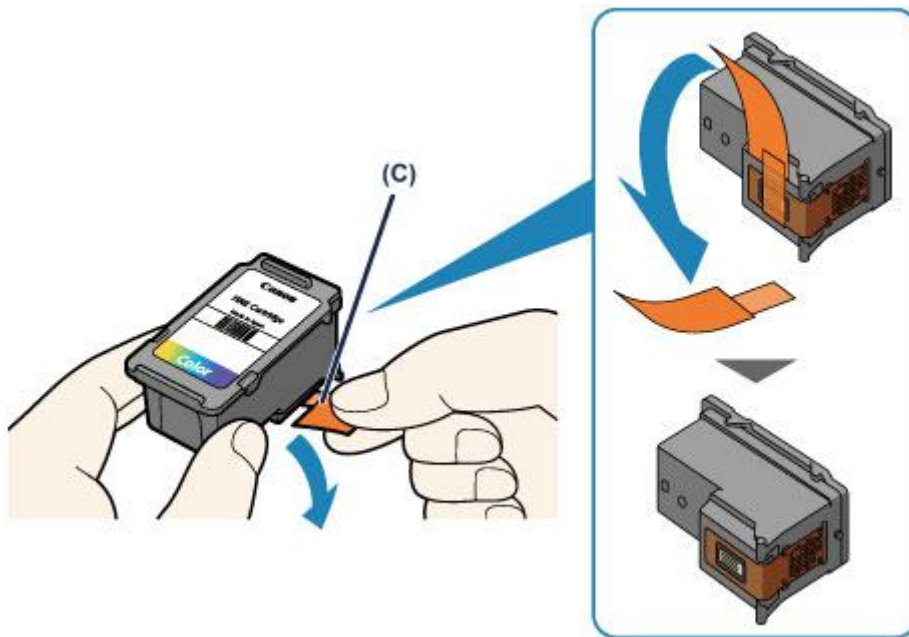


**»» Important**

- Handle the FINE cartridge carefully to avoid staining of clothing or the surrounding area.
- Discard the empty FINE cartridge according to the local laws and regulations regarding disposal of consumables.

6. Prepare a new FINE cartridge.

1. Take a new FINE cartridge out of its package and remove the protective tape (C) gently.



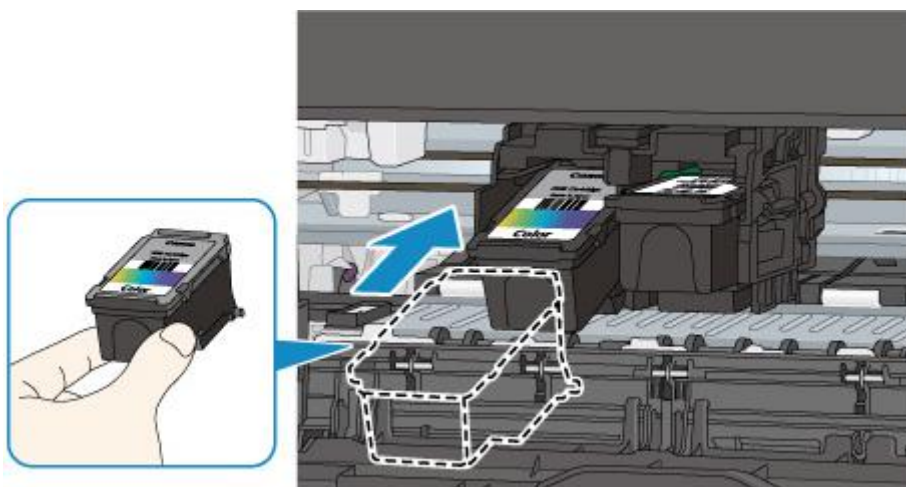
### ►► Important

- If you shake a FINE cartridge, ink may spill out and stain your hands and the surrounding area. Handle a FINE cartridge carefully.
- Be careful not to stain your hands and the surrounding area with ink on the removed protective tape.
- Do not reattach the protective tape once you have removed it. Discard it according to the local laws and regulations regarding disposal of consumables.
- Do not touch the electrical contacts or print head nozzle on a FINE cartridge. The printer may not print properly if you touch them.

## 7. Install the FINE cartridge.

1. Insert the new FINE cartridge at a slant into the FINE cartridge holder.

The color FINE cartridge should be installed into the left slot and the black FINE cartridge should be installed into the right slot.



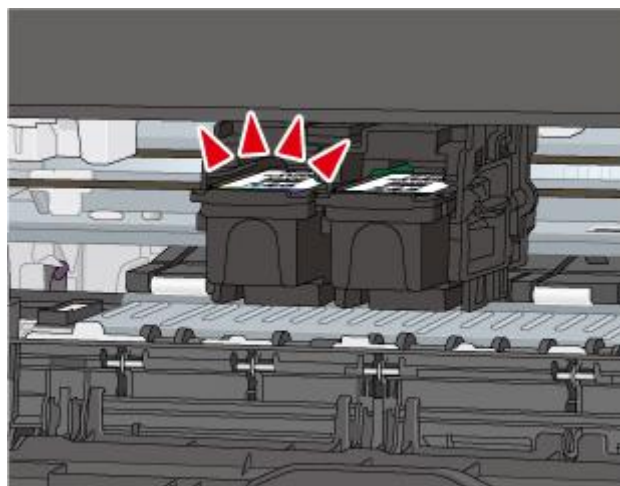
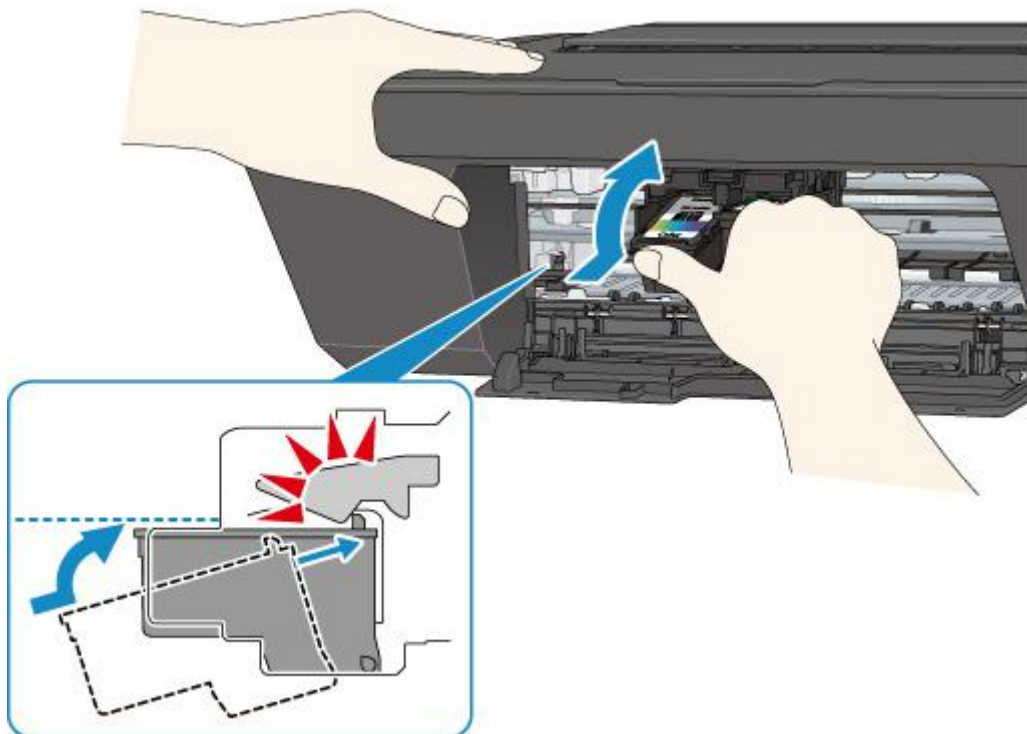


**»» Important**

- Insert the FINE cartridge gently so that it does not hit the electrical contacts on the FINE cartridge holder.



2. Push the FINE cartridge in and up firmly until it snaps into place.



## ►► Important

- Check if the FINE cartridge is installed correctly.



- The printer cannot print unless both the color FINE cartridge and black FINE cartridge are installed. Be sure to install both cartridges.

8. Close the cover.



## ►► Note

- If the **Alarm** lamp lights or flashes after the cover is closed, take appropriate action.
  - [An Error Occurs](#)
- The printer may make noise during operation.

9. Adjust the print head position.

10. After replacing the FINE cartridge, [align the print head](#).

## ►► Note

- When print head alignment is performed, the printer starts cleaning the print head automatically before printing the print head alignment sheet. Do not perform any other operations until the printer completes the cleaning of the print head.

# Checking the Ink Status with the Ink Lamps on the Operation Panel

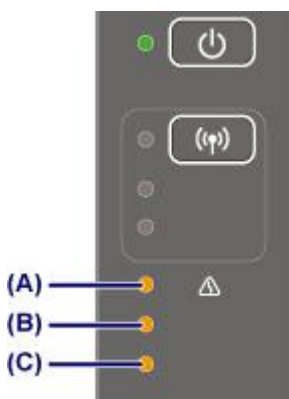
## ►►► Note

- The ink level detector is mounted on the printer to detect the remaining ink level. The printer considers as ink is full when a new FINE cartridge is installed, and then starts to detect a remaining ink level. If you install a used FINE cartridge, the indicated ink level of it may not be correct. In such case, refer to the ink level information only as a guide.
- When remaining ink cautions or errors occur, the ink lamps and the **Alarm** lamp will flash to inform you of the error. Count the number of flashes and take appropriate action.

### ■ [An Error Occurs](#)

In the copy standby mode, you can check the ink status with the **Color Ink** lamp and **Black Ink** lamp.

\* All the lamps on the operation panel are shown lit in the figure below for explanatory purposes.



- (A) **Alarm** lamp
- (B) **Black Ink** lamp
- (C) **Color Ink** lamp

### **Color Ink lamp or Black Ink lamp lights**

The ink is running low. Prepare a new ink cartridge. The resulting print quality may not be satisfactory, if printing is continued under this condition.

### **Color Ink lamp or Black Ink lamp flashes, while Alarm lamp flashes**

An error has occurred.

### ■ [An Error Occurs](#)

\* For some types of errors, the **Alarm** lamp may not flash.

## ►►► Note

- You can also check the ink status on the computer screen.
  - For Windows:
    - [Checking Ink Status from Your Computer](#)
  - For Mac OS:
    - [Checking Ink Status from Your Computer](#)

## **Maintenance**

- ▶ **If Printing Is Faint or Uneven**
- ▶ **Performing Maintenance Functions from Your Computer (Windows)**
- ▶ **Performing Maintenance Functions from Your Computer (Mac OS)**
- ▶ **Cleaning**

## **If Printing Is Faint or Uneven**

- **Maintenance Procedure**
- **Printing the Nozzle Check Pattern**
- **Examining the Nozzle Check Pattern**
- **Cleaning the Print Head**
- **Deep Print Head Cleaning**
- **Aligning the Print Head**

## Maintenance Procedure

If print results are blurred, colors are not printed correctly, or print results are unsatisfactory (e.g. misaligned printed ruled lines), perform the maintenance procedure below.

### ▶▶▶ Important

- Do not rinse or wipe the FINE cartridge. This can cause trouble with the FINE cartridge.

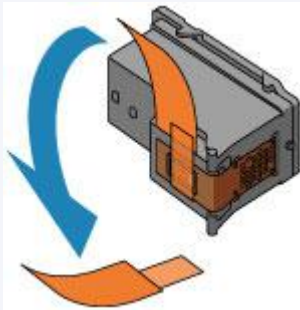
### ▶▶▶ Note

- Check if ink remains in the FINE cartridge.
  - [Checking the Ink Status with the Ink Lamps on the Operation Panel](#)

Check if the FINE cartridge is installed correctly.

- [Replacing Procedure](#)

Also check if the protective tape on the bottom of the FINE cartridge is removed.



- If the **Alarm** lamp lights or flashes, see [An Error Occurs](#).
- Increasing the print quality in the printer driver settings may improve the print result.
  - For Windows:
    - [Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data](#)
  - For Mac OS:
    - [Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data](#)

## When the Print Results Are Blurred or Uneven:

**Step 1** Print the nozzle check pattern.

From the printer

- [Printing the Nozzle Check Pattern](#)

From the computer

- For Windows:
  - [Printing a Nozzle Check Pattern](#)
- For Mac OS:
  - [Printing a Nozzle Check Pattern](#)

**Step2** [Examine the nozzle check pattern.](#)

If there are missing lines or horizontal white streaks in the pattern:



**Step3** Clean the print head.

From the printer

■ [Cleaning the Print Head](#)

From the computer

- For Windows:
  - [Cleaning the Print Heads](#)
- For Mac OS:
  - [Cleaning the Print Heads](#)

After cleaning the print head, print and examine the nozzle check pattern: ➔ [Step1](#)

If the problem is not resolved after performing from step 1 to step 3 twice:



**Step4** Clean the print head deeply.

From the printer

■ [Deep Print Head Cleaning](#)

From the computer

- For Windows:
  - [Cleaning the Print Heads](#)
- For Mac OS:
  - [Cleaning the Print Heads](#)

If the problem is not resolved, turn off the power and clean the print head deeply again after 24 hours.

If the problem is still not resolved:



**Step5** Replace the FINE cartridge.

■ [Replacing a FINE Cartridge](#)

➤➤➤ **Note**

- If the problem is still not resolved after replacing the FINE cartridge, contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

## When the Print Results Are Not Even such as the Ruled Lines Are Misaligned:

|| Step | Align the print head.

From the printer

- [Aligning the Print Head](#)

From the computer

- For Windows:
  - Adjusting Print Head Position Automatically
- For Mac OS:
  - Adjusting Print Head Position Automatically



## Printing the Nozzle Check Pattern

Print the nozzle check pattern to determine whether the ink ejects properly from the print head nozzle.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- If the remaining ink level is low, the nozzle check pattern will not be printed correctly. [Replace the FINE cartridge](#) whose ink is low.

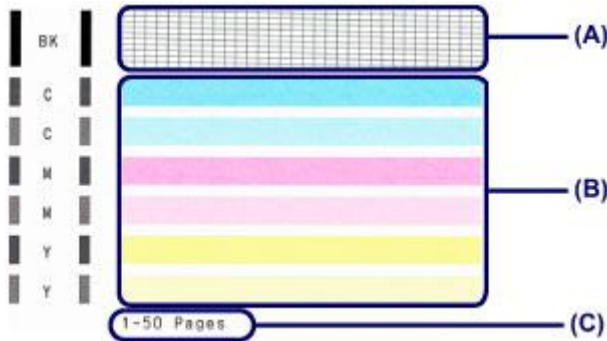
**You need to prepare: a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper**

1. Make sure that the power is turned on.
2. Load a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper in the rear tray.
3. Pull out the paper output tray and the output tray extension.
4. Hold down the **Stop** button until the **Alarm** lamp flashes once, then release it immediately.  
The nozzle check pattern will be printed.  
Do not perform any other operations until the printer completes the printing of the nozzle check pattern.
5. [Examine the nozzle check pattern.](#)

## Examining the Nozzle Check Pattern

Examine the nozzle check pattern, and clean the print head if necessary.

1. Check if there are missing lines in the pattern (A) or horizontal white streaks in the pattern (B).



(C) Number of sheets printed so far

**If there are missing lines in the pattern (A):**

[Cleaning the print head](#) is required.



(D) Good

(E) Bad (lines are missing)

**If there are horizontal white streaks in the pattern (B):**

[Cleaning the print head](#) is required.



(F) Good

(G) Bad (horizontal white streaks are present)

**If any color in the pattern (A) or the pattern (B) is not printed:**



(Example: Magenta pattern is not printed)

[Cleaning the print head](#) is required.

### ►► Note

- The total number of sheets printed so far is shown in increments of 50 sheets on the printout of the nozzle check pattern.

## Cleaning the Print Head

Clean the print head if lines are missing or if horizontal white streaks are present in the printed nozzle check pattern. Cleaning unclogs the nozzles and restores the print head condition. Cleaning the print head consumes ink, so clean the print head only when necessary.

1. Make sure that the power is turned on.
2. Hold down the **Stop** button until the **Alarm** lamp flashes twice, then release it immediately.

The printer starts cleaning the print head.

The cleaning will be complete when the **ON** lamp lights after flashing.

Do not perform any other operations until the printer completes the cleaning of the print head. This takes about 30 seconds.

3. Check the print head condition.

To check the print head condition, [print the nozzle check pattern](#).

### ▶▶ Note

- If the problem is not resolved after cleaning the print head twice, [clean the print head deeply](#).

## Deep Print Head Cleaning

If print quality does not improve by the standard cleaning of the print head, clean the print head deeply. Cleaning the print head deeply consumes more ink than the standard cleaning of the print head, so clean the print head deeply only when necessary.

1. Make sure that the power is turned on.
2. Hold down the **Stop** button until the **Alarm** lamp flashes three times, then release it immediately.

The printer starts cleaning the print head deeply.

The cleaning will be complete when the **ON** lamp lights after flashing.

Do not perform any other operations until the printer completes the deep cleaning of the print head. This takes about 1 minute.

3. Check the print head condition.

To check the print head condition, [print the nozzle check pattern](#).

If the problem is not resolved, turn off the power and clean the print head deeply again after 24 hours.

If the problem is still not resolved, [replace the FINE cartridge](#) with a new one.

If the problem is still not resolved after replacing the FINE cartridge, contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

## Aligning the Print Head

If printed ruled lines are misaligned or print results are otherwise unsatisfactory, adjust the print head position.

### ►►► Note

- If the remaining ink level is low, the print head alignment sheet will not be printed correctly.

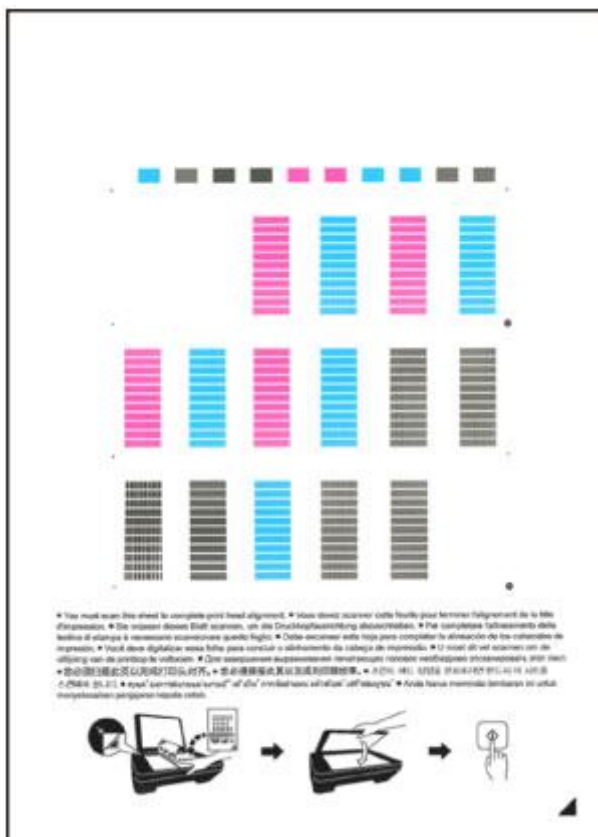
[Replace the FINE cartridge](#) whose ink is low.

**You need to prepare: a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper (including recycled paper)\***

\* Be sure to use paper that is white and clean on both sides.

1. Make sure that the power is turned on.
2. Load a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper in the rear tray.
3. Pull out the paper output tray and the output tray extension.
4. Hold down the **Stop** button until the **Alarm** lamp flashes four times, then release it immediately.

The print head alignment sheet will be printed.





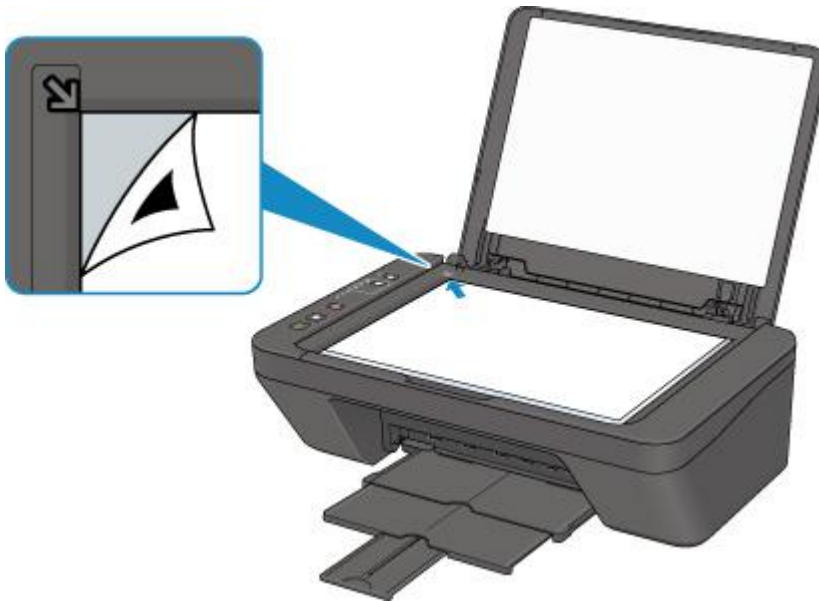
## »» Important

- Do not touch any printed part on the print head alignment sheet. If the sheet is stained or wrinkled, it may not be scanned properly.
- If the print head alignment sheet was not printed correctly, press the **Stop** button, then redo this procedure from the beginning.

### 5. Scan the print head alignment sheet to adjust the print head position.

1. Load the print head alignment sheet on the platen glass.

Load the print head alignment sheet WITH THE PRINTED SIDE FACING DOWN and align the mark  on the bottom right corner of the sheet with the alignment mark .



2. Close the document cover gently, then press the **Black** button or the **Color** button.

The printer starts scanning the print head alignment sheet, and the print head position will be adjusted automatically.

The print head position adjustment will be complete when the **ON** lamp lights after flashing.

Remove the print head alignment sheet on the platen glass.

## »» Important

- Do not open the document cover or move the print head alignment sheet on the platen glass until adjusting the print head position is complete.
- If adjusting the print head position has failed, the **Alarm** lamp flashes. Press the **Black** button or the **Color** button to release the error, then take appropriate action.

 [An Error Occurs](#)

## »» Note

- If the print results are still not satisfactory after adjusting the print head position as described above, adjust the print head position manually from the computer.
  - For Windows:

■ Adjusting Print Head Position

- For Mac OS:

■ Adjusting Print Head Position

- To print and check the current head position adjustment values, hold down the **Stop** button until the **Alarm** lamp flashes six times, then release it immediately.

## **Cleaning**

- ▶ **Cleaning Exterior Surfaces**
- ▶ **Cleaning the Platen Glass and Document Cover**
- ▶ **Cleaning Paper Feed Rollers**
- ▶ **Cleaning Inside the Printer (Bottom Plate Cleaning)**



## Cleaning Paper Feed Rollers

If the paper feed rollers are dirty or paper powder is attached to it, paper may not be fed properly.

In this case, clean the paper feed rollers. Cleaning will wear out the paper feed rollers, so perform this only when necessary.

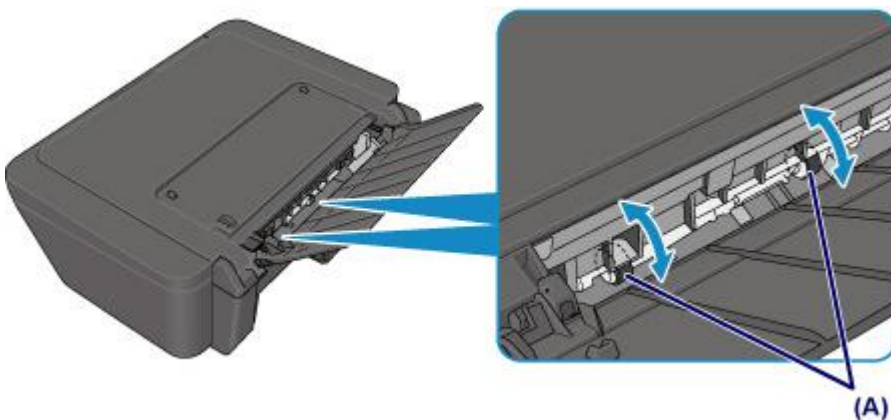
**You need to prepare: a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper or cleaning sheet available on the market**

1. Make sure that the power is turned on and remove any paper from the rear tray.
2. Clean the paper feed rollers without paper.
  1. Hold down the **Stop** button until the **Alarm** lamp flashes seven times, then release it immediately.

The paper feed rollers will rotate as it is cleaned.
3. Clean the paper feed rollers with paper.
  1. Make sure that the paper feed rollers have stopped rotating, load a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper or cleaning sheet available on the market in the rear tray.
  2. Pull out the paper output tray and the output tray extension.
  3. Hold down the **Stop** button until the **Alarm** lamp flashes seven times, then release it immediately.

The printer starts cleaning. The cleaning will be complete when the paper is ejected.

If the problem is not resolved after cleaning the paper feed rollers in the rear tray, turn off the power, unplug the power cord, then wipe the paper feed rollers (the center roller and the right roller) (A) located inside the rear tray with a moistened cotton swab or the like while rotating them manually. Do not touch the rollers with your fingers. Rotate the rollers two or more times.



After cleaning the paper feed rollers, turn on the power, then clean the paper feed rollers again.

If the problem is not resolved after cleaning the paper feed rollers, contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

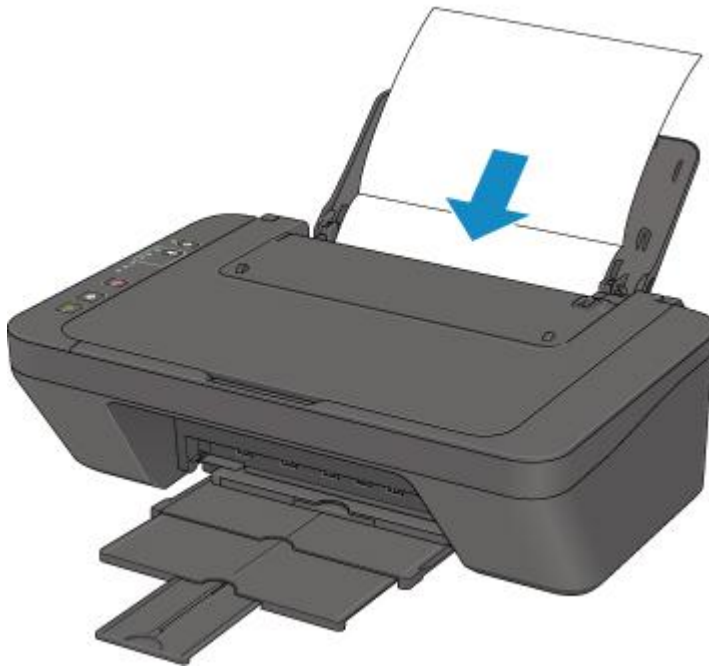
## Cleaning Inside the Printer (Bottom Plate Cleaning)

Remove stains from the inside of the printer. If the inside of the printer becomes dirty, printed paper may get dirty, so we recommend performing cleaning regularly.

**You need to prepare: a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper\***

\* Be sure to use a new piece of paper.

1. Make sure that the power is turned on and remove any paper from the rear tray.
2. Prepare paper.
  1. Fold a single sheet of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper in half widthwise, then unfold the paper.
  2. Load only this sheet of paper in the rear tray with the open side facing you.
  3. Pull out the paper output tray and the output tray extension.



3. Hold down the **Stop** button until the **Alarm** lamp flashes eight times, then release it immediately.

The paper cleans the inside of the printer as it feeds through the printer.

Check the folded parts of the ejected paper. If they are smudged with ink, perform Bottom Plate Cleaning again.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- When performing Bottom Plate Cleaning again, be sure to use a new piece of paper.

If the problem is not resolved after performing cleaning again, the protrusions inside the printer may be stained. Wipe off any ink from the protrusions using a cotton swab or the like.

**»» Important**

- Be sure to turn off the power and unplug the power cord before cleaning the printer.



## Overview

### ▶ Safety

- Safety Precautions
- Regulatory Information
- WEEE (EU & EEA)

### ▶ Main Components and Their Use

- Main Components
- Power Supply

### ▶ Changing Settings

- Changing Printer Settings from Your Computer (Windows)
- Changing Printer Settings from Your Computer (Mac OS)
- Changing Settings from Operation Panel
- Changing Printer's Setting Using Web Browser

### ▶ Network Connection

- Network Connection Tips

### ▶ Network Settings (IJ Network Device Setup Utility) (Windows)

- IJ Network Device Setup Utility
- Starting Up IJ Network Device Setup Utility

### ▶ Ensuring Optimal Printing Results

- Ink Tips
- Printing Tips
- Be Sure to Make Paper Settings after Loading Paper
- Canceling Print Jobs
- Printer Handling Precautions
- Keeping Print Quality High
- Transporting Your Printer

### ▶ Legal Restrictions on Scanning/Copying

► **Specifications**

## **Safety**

- ▶ **Safety Precautions**
- ▶ **Regulatory Information**
- ▶ **WEEE (EU&EEA)**

# Safety Precautions

## Choosing a location

- Do not install the printer in a location that is unstable or subject to excessive vibration.
- Do not install the printer in locations that are very humid or dusty, in direct sunlight, outdoors, or close to a heating source.  
To avoid the risk of fire or electric shocks, use the printer under the operating environment specified in the [Specifications](#).
- Do not place the printer on a thick rug or carpet.
- Do not place the printer with its back attached to the wall.

## Power Supply

- Ensure that the area around the power outlet is kept clear at all times so you can easily unplug the power cord if necessary.
- Never remove the plug by pulling on the cord.  
Pulling the cord may damage the power cord, leading to possible fire or electrical shock.
- Do not use an extension lead/cord.

## Working Around the Printer

- Never put your hands or fingers in the printer while it is printing.
- When moving the printer, carry the printer at both ends. In case the printer weighs more than 14 kg, it is recommended to have two people lifting the printer. Accidental dropping of the printer causes injury. For the printer's weight, refer to the [Specifications](#).
- Do not place any object on the printer. Especially do not place metal objects (paper clips, staples, etc.) or containers of flammable solvents (alcohol, thinners, etc.) on top of the printer.
- Do not transport or use the printer on a slant, vertically or upside-down, as the ink may leak and damage the printer.
- When loading a thick book on the platen glass, do not press hard on the Document Cover. The platen glass may break and cause injury.

## Print Heads/Ink Tanks/FINE Cartridges

- Keep ink tanks out of the reach of children. In case ink is accidentally licked or swallowed, rinse out mouth or give one or two glasses of water to drink. If irritation or discomfort occurs, obtain medical advice immediately.
- In case ink gets in contact with eyes, rinse with water immediately. In case ink gets in contact with skin, wash with soap and water immediately. If irritation to eyes or skin persists, obtain medical advice immediately.
- Never touch the electrical contacts on a print head or FINE cartridges after printing.  
The metal parts may be very hot and could cause burns.
- Do not throw ink tanks and FINE cartridges into fire.
- Do not attempt to disassemble or modify the print head, ink tanks, and FINE cartridges.

## Regulatory Information

### Users in the U.S.A.

FCC Notice (U.S.A. Only)

For 120V, 60Hz model

Model Number: K10446 (Contains FCC Approved WLAN Module K30365)

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Use of a shielded cable is required to comply with Class B limits in Subpart B of Part 15 of the FCC Rules.

Do not make any changes or modifications to the equipment unless otherwise specified in the manual. If such changes or modifications should be made, you could be required to stop operation of the equipment.

FCC ID:AZDK30365

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate equipment.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

The equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits for uncontrolled equipment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance at least 20cm between the radiator and persons body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles) and must not be colocated or operated with any other antenna or transmitter.

Canon U.S.A., Inc.

One Canon Park

Melville, New York 11747

1-800-652-2666

### Users in Canada

This device complies with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:



(1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

This equipment complies with IC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment and meets RSS-102 of the IC radio frequency (RF) Exposure rules. This equipment should be installed and operated keeping the radiator at least 20cm or more away from person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles).

## **Pour les usagers résidant au Canada**

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes :

(1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Cet équipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements énoncées pour un environnement non contrôlé et respecte les règles d'exposition aux fréquences radioélectriques (RF) CNR-102 de l'IC. Cet équipement doit être installé et utilisé en gardant une distance de 20 cm ou plus entre le dispositif rayonnant et le corps (à l'exception des extrémités : mains, poignets, pieds et chevilles).

## **Environmental Information**

Reducing your environmental impact

### **Power Consumption and Operational Modes**

The amount of electricity a device consumes depends on the way the device is used. This product is designed and set in a way to allow you to reduce the power consumption. After the last print it switches to Ready Mode. In this mode it can print again immediately if required. If the product is not used for a time, the device switches to its Sleep Mode. The devices consume less power (Watt) in these modes.

### **Energy Star®**

The Energy Star® programme is a voluntary scheme to promote the development and purchase of energy efficient models, which help to minimise environmental impact.

Products which meet the stringent requirements of the Energy Star® programme for both environmental benefits and the amount of energy consumption will carry the Energy Star® logo accordingly.

### **Paper types**

This product can be used to print on both recycled and virgin paper (certified to an environmental stewardship scheme), which complies with EN12281 or a similar quality standard. In addition it can support printing on media down to a weight of 64g/m<sup>2</sup>, lighter paper means less resources used and a lower environmental footprint for your printing needs.



## WEEE (EU&EEA)

### Only for European Union and EEA (Norway, Iceland and Liechtenstein)



This symbol indicates that this product is not to be disposed of with your household waste, according to the WEEE Directive (2012/19/EU) and national legislation. This product should be handed over to a designated collection point, e.g., on an authorized one-for-one basis when you buy a new similar product or to an authorized collection site for recycling waste electrical and electronic equipment (EEE). Improper handling of this type of waste could have a possible negative impact on the environment and human health due to potentially hazardous substances that are generally associated with EEE. At the same time, your cooperation in the correct disposal of this product will contribute to the effective usage of natural resources. For more information about where you can drop off your waste equipment for recycling, please contact your local city office, waste authority, approved WEEE scheme or your household waste disposal service. For more information regarding return and recycling of WEEE products, please visit [www.canon-europe.com/weee](http://www.canon-europe.com/weee).

### Nur für Europäische Union und EWR (Norwegen, Island und Liechtenstein)



Dieses Symbol weist darauf hin, dass dieses Produkt gemäß der EU-Richtlinie über Elektro- und Elektronik-Altgeräte (2012/19/EU) und nationalen Gesetzen nicht über den Hausmüll entsorgt werden darf. Dieses Produkt muss bei einer dafür vorgesehenen Sammelstelle abgegeben werden. Dies kann z. B. durch Rückgabe beim Kauf eines ähnlichen Produkts oder durch Abgabe bei einer autorisierten Sammelstelle für die Wiederaufbereitung von Elektro- und Elektronik-Altgeräten geschehen. Der unsachgemäße Umgang mit Altgeräten kann aufgrund potentiell gefährlicher Stoffe, die generell mit Elektro- und Elektronik-Altgeräten in Verbindung stehen, negative Auswirkungen auf die Umwelt und die menschliche Gesundheit haben. Durch die umweltgerechte Entsorgung dieses Produkts tragen Sie außerdem zu einer effektiven Nutzung natürlicher Ressourcen bei. Informationen zu Sammelstellen für Altgeräte erhalten Sie bei Ihrer Stadtverwaltung, dem öffentlich-rechtlichen Entsorgungsträger, einer autorisierten Stelle für die Entsorgung von Elektro- und Elektronik-Altgeräten oder Ihrem örtlichen Entsorgungsunternehmen. Weitere Informationen zur Rückgabe und Entsorgung von Elektro- und Elektronik-Altgeräten finden Sie unter [www.canon-europe.com/weee](http://www.canon-europe.com/weee).

### Union Européenne, Norvège, Islande et Liechtenstein uniquement.



Ce symbole indique que ce produit ne doit pas être jeté avec les ordures ménagères, conformément à la directive DEEE (2012/19/UE) et à la réglementation de votre pays. Ce produit doit être confié au distributeur à chaque fois que vous achetez un produit neuf similaire, ou à un point de collecte mis en

place par les collectivités locales pour le recyclage des Déchets des Équipements Électriques et Électroniques (DEEE). Le traitement inapproprié de ce type de déchet risque d'avoir des répercussions sur l'environnement et la santé humaine, du fait de la présence de substances potentiellement dangereuses généralement associées aux équipements électriques et électroniques. Parallèlement, votre entière coopération dans le cadre de la mise au rebut correcte de ce produit favorisera une meilleure utilisation des ressources naturelles. Pour plus d'informations sur les points de collecte des équipements à recycler, contactez vos services municipaux, les autorités locales compétentes, le plan DEEE approuvé ou le service d'enlèvement des ordures ménagères. Pour plus d'informations sur le retour et le recyclage des produits DEEE, consultez le site: [www.canon-europe.com/weee](http://www.canon-europe.com/weee).

## **Uitsluitend bestemd voor de Europese Unie en EER (Noorwegen, IJsland en Liechtenstein)**



Dit symbool geeft aan dat dit product in overeenstemming met de AEEA-richtlijn (2012/19/EU) en de nationale wetgeving niet mag worden afgevoerd met het huishoudelijk afval. Dit product moet worden ingeleverd bij een aangewezen, geautoriseerd inzamelpunt, bijvoorbeeld wanneer u een nieuw gelijksoortig product aanschaft, of bij een geautoriseerd inzamelpunt voor hergebruik van elektrische en elektronische apparatuur (EEA). Een onjuiste afvoer van dit type afval kan leiden tot negatieve effecten op het milieu en de volksgezondheid als gevolg van potentieel gevaarlijke stoffen die veel voorkomen in elektrische en elektronische apparatuur (EEA). Bovendien werkt u door een juiste afvoer van dit product mee aan het effectieve gebruik van natuurlijke hulpbronnen. Voor meer informatie over waar u uw afgedankte apparatuur kunt inleveren voor recycling kunt u contact opnemen met het gemeentehuis in uw woonplaats, de reinigingsdienst, of het afvalverwerkingsbedrijf. U kunt ook het schema voor de afvoer van afgedankte elektrische en elektronische apparatuur (AEEA) raadplegen. Ga voor meer informatie over het inzamelen en recyclen van afgedankte elektrische en elektronische apparatuur naar [www.canon-europe.com/weee](http://www.canon-europe.com/weee).

## **Sólo para la Unión Europea y el Área Económica Europea (Noruega, Islandia y Liechtenstein)**



Este símbolo indica que este producto no debe desecharse con los desperdicios domésticos, de acuerdo con la directiva RAEE (2012/19/UE) y con la legislación nacional. Este producto debe entregarse en uno de los puntos de recogida designados, como por ejemplo, entregándolo en el lugar de venta al comprar un producto similar o depositándolo en un lugar de recogida autorizado para el reciclado de residuos de aparatos eléctricos y electrónicos (RAEE). La manipulación inapropiada de este tipo de desechos podría tener un impacto negativo en el entorno y la salud humana, debido a las sustancias potencialmente peligrosas que normalmente están asociadas con los RAEE. Al mismo tiempo, su cooperación a la hora de desechar correctamente este producto contribuirá a la utilización eficaz de los recursos naturales. Para más información sobre cómo puede eliminar el equipo para su reciclado, póngase en contacto con las autoridades locales, con las autoridades encargadas de los desechos, con un sistema de gestión RAEE

autorizado o con el servicio de recogida de basuras doméstico. Si desea más información acerca de la devolución y reciclado de RAEE, visite la web [www.canon-europe.com/weee](http://www.canon-europe.com/weee).

### **Només per a la Unió Europea i a l'Espai Econòmic Europeu (Noruega, Islàndia i Liechtenstein)**



Aquest símbol indica que aquest producte no s'ha de llençar a les escombraries de la llar, d'acord amb la Directiva RAEE (2012/19/UE) i la legislació nacional. Aquest producte s'hauria de lliurar en un dels punts de recollida designats, com per exemple, intercanviant-lo un per un en comprar un producte similar o lliurant-lo en un lloc de recollida autoritzat per al reciclatge de residus d'aparells elèctrics i electrònics (AEE). La manipulació inadequada d'aquest tipus de residus podria tenir un impacte negatiu en l'entorn i en la salut humana, a causa de les substàncies potencialment perilloses que normalment estan associades als AEE. Així mateix, la vostra cooperació a l'hora de llençar correctament aquest producte contribuirà a la utilització efectiva dels recursos naturals. Per a més informació sobre els punts on podeu lliurar aquest producte per procedir al seu reciclatge, adreceu-vos a la vostra oficina municipal, a les autoritats encarregades dels residus, al pla de residus homologat per la RAEE o al servei de recollida de deixalles domèstiques de la vostra localitat. Per a més informació sobre la devolució i el reciclatge de productes RAEE, visiteu [www.canon-europe.com/weee](http://www.canon-europe.com/weee).

### **Solo per Unione Europea e SEE (Norvegia, Islanda e Liechtenstein)**



Questo simbolo indica che il prodotto deve essere oggetto di raccolta separata in conformità alla Direttiva RAEE (2012/19/UE) e alla normativa locale vigente. Il prodotto deve essere smaltito presso un centro di raccolta differenziata, un distributore autorizzato che applichi il principio dell'"uno contro uno", ovvero del ritiro della vecchia apparecchiatura elettrica al momento dell'acquisto di una nuova, o un impianto autorizzato al riciclaggio dei rifiuti di apparecchiature elettriche ed elettroniche. La gestione impropria di questo tipo di rifiuti può avere un impatto negativo sull'ambiente e sulla salute umana causato dalle sostanze potenzialmente pericolose che potrebbero essere contenute nelle apparecchiature elettriche ed elettroniche. Un corretto smaltimento di tali prodotti contribuirà inoltre a un uso efficace delle risorse naturali ed eviterà di incorrere nelle sanzioni amministrative di cui all'art. 255 e successivi del Decreto Legislativo n. 152/06. Per ulteriori informazioni sullo smaltimento e il recupero dei Rifiuti di Apparecchiature Elettriche ed Elettroniche, consultare la Direttiva RAEE, rivolgersi alle autorità competenti, oppure visitare il sito [www.canon-europe.com/weee](http://www.canon-europe.com/weee).

### **Apenas para a União Europeia e AEE (Noruega, Islândia e Liechtenstein)**



Este símbolo indica que o produto não deve ser colocado no lixo doméstico, de acordo com a Directiva REEE (2012/19/UE) e a legislação nacional. Este produto deverá ser colocado num ponto de recolha designado, por exemplo, num local próprio autorizado quando adquirir um produto semelhante novo ou num local de recolha autorizado para reciclar resíduos de equipamentos eléctricos e electrónicos (EEE). O tratamento inadequado deste tipo de resíduo poderá causar um impacto negativo no ambiente e na saúde humana devido às substâncias potencialmente perigosas normalmente associadas aos equipamentos eléctricos e electrónicos. Simultaneamente, a sua cooperação no tratamento correcto deste produto contribuirá para a utilização eficaz dos recursos naturais. Para mais informações sobre os locais onde o equipamento poderá ser reciclado, contacte os serviços locais, a autoridade responsável pelos resíduos, o esquema REEE aprovado ou o serviço de tratamento de lixo doméstico. Para mais informações sobre a devolução e reciclagem de produtos REEE, vá a [www.canon-europe.com/weee](http://www.canon-europe.com/weee).

## Gælder kun i Europæiske Union og EØS (Norge, Island og Liechtenstein)



Dette symbol angiver, at det pågældende produkt ikke må bortskaffes sammen med dagrenovation jf. direktivet om affald af elektrisk og elektronisk udstyr (WEEE) (2012/19/EU) og gældende national lovgivning. Det pågældende produkt skal afleveres på et nærmere specificeret indsamlingssted, f.eks. i overensstemmelse med en godkendt én-til-én-procedure, når du indkøber et nyt tilsvarende produkt, eller produktet skal afleveres på et godkendt indsamlingssted for elektronikaffald. Forkert håndtering af denne type affald kan medføre negative konsekvenser for miljøet og menneskers helbred på grund af de potentielt sundhedsskadelige stoffer, der generelt kan forefindes i elektrisk og elektronisk udstyr. Når du foretager korrekt bortskaffelse af det pågældende produkt, bidrager du til effektiv brug af naturressourcerne. Yderligere oplysninger om, hvor du kan bortskaffe dit elektronikaffald med henblik på genanvendelse, får du hos de kommunale renovationsmyndigheder. Yderligere oplysninger om returnering og genanvendelse af affald af elektrisk og elektronisk udstyr får du ved at besøge [www.canon-europe.com/weee](http://www.canon-europe.com/weee).

## Μόνο για την Ευρωπαϊκή Ένωση και τον ΕΟΧ (Νορβηγία, Ισλανδία και Λιχτενστάιν)



Αυτό το σύμβολο υποδηλώνει ότι αυτό το προϊόν δεν πρέπει να απορρίπτεται μαζί με τα οικιακά απορρίμματα, σύμφωνα με την Οδηγία σχετικά με τα Απόβλητα Ηλεκτρικού και Ηλεκτρονικού Εξοπλισμού (ΑΗΗΕ) (2012/19/ΕΕ) και την εθνική σας νομοθεσία. Αυτό το προϊόν πρέπει να παραδίδεται σε καθορισμένο σημείο συλλογής, π.χ. σε μια εξουσιοδοτημένη βάση ανταλλαγής όταν αγοράζετε ένα νέο παρόμοιο προϊόν ή σε μια εξουσιοδοτημένη θέση συλλογής για την ανακύκλωση των αποβλήτων Ηλεκτρικού και Ηλεκτρονικού Εξοπλισμού (ΗΗΕ). Ο ακατάλληλος χειρισμός αυτού του τύπου αποβλήτων μπορεί να έχει αρνητικό αντίκτυπο στο περιβάλλον και την υγεία του ανθρώπου, λόγω δυνητικώς επικίνδυνων ουσιών που γενικά συνδέονται με τον ΗΗΕ. Ταυτόχρονα, η συνεργασία σας όσον αφορά τη σωστή απόρριψη αυτού του προϊόντος θα συμβάλει στην αποτελεσματική χρήση των φυσικών πόρων. Για περισσότερες πληροφορίες σχετικά με τα σημεία όπου μπορείτε να απορρίψετε τον εξοπλισμό σας για

ανακύκλωση, επικοινωνήστε με το τοπικό γραφείο της πόλης σας, την υπηρεσία απορριμμάτων, το εγκεκριμένο σχήμα ΑΗΗΕ ή την υπηρεσία απόρριψης οικιακών αποβλήτων. Για περισσότερες πληροφορίες σχετικά με την επιστροφή και την ανακύκλωση των προϊόντων ΑΗΗΕ, επισκεφθείτε την τοποθεσία [www.canon-europe.com/weee](http://www.canon-europe.com/weee).

## Gjelder kun den europeiske union og EØS (Norge, Island og Liechtenstein)



Dette symbolet indikerer at dette produktet ikke skal kastes sammen med husholdningsavfall, i henhold til WEEE-direktiv (2012/19/EU) og nasjonal lov. Produktet må leveres til et dertil egnet innsamlingspunkt, det vil si på en autorisert en-til-en-basis når du kjøper et nytt lignende produkt, eller til et autorisert innsamlingssted for resirkulering av avfall fra elektrisk og elektronisk utstyr (EE-utstyr). Feil håndtering av denne typen avfall kan være miljø- og helseskadelig på grunn av potensielt skadelige stoffer som ofte brukes i EE-utstyr. Samtidig bidrar din innsats for korrekt avhending av produktet til effektiv bruk av naturressurser. Du kan få mer informasjon om hvor du kan avhende utrangert utstyr til resirkulering ved å kontakte lokale myndigheter, et godkjent WEEE-program eller husholdningens renovasjonsselskap. Du finner mer informasjon om retur og resirkulering av WEEE-produkter på [www.canon-europe.com/weee](http://www.canon-europe.com/weee).

## Vain Euroopan unionin sekä ETA:n (Norja, Islanti ja Liechtenstein) alueelle.



Tämä tunnus osoittaa, että sähkö- ja elektroniikkalaiteromua koskeva direktiivi (SER-direktiivi, 2012/19/EU) sekä kansallinen lainsäädäntö kieltävät tuotteen hävittämisen talousjätteen mukana. Tuote on vietävä asianmukaiseen keräyspisteeseen, esimerkiksi kodinkoneliikkeeseen uutta vastaavaa tuotetta ostettaessa tai viralliseen sähkö- ja elektroniikkalaiteromun keräyspisteeseen. Sähkö- ja elektroniikkalaiteromun virheellinen käsittely voi vahingoittaa ympäristöä ja ihmisten terveyttä, koska laitteet saattavat sisältää ympäristölle ja terveydelle haitallisia aineita. Lisäksi tuotteen asianmukainen hävittäminen säästää luonnonvaroja. Lisätietoja sähkö- ja elektroniikkalaiteromun keräyspisteistä saat kaupunkien ja kuntien tiedotuksesta, jätehuoltoviranomaisilta, sähkö- ja elektroniikkalaiteromun kierrätysjärjestelmän ylläpitäjältä ja jätehuoltoyhtiöltä. Lisätietoja sähkö- ja elektroniikkalaiteromun keräyksestä ja kierrätyksestä on osoitteessa [www.canon-europe.com/weee](http://www.canon-europe.com/weee).

## Endast för Europeiska unionen och EES (Norge, Island och Liechtenstein)



Den här symbolen visar att produkten enligt WEEE-direktivet (2012/19/EU) och nationell lagstiftning inte får sorteras och slängas som hushållsavfall. Den här produkten ska lämnas in på en därför avsedd insamlingsplats, t.ex. på en återvinningsstation auktoriserad att hantera elektrisk och elektronisk utrustning (EE-utrustning) eller hos handlare som är auktoriserade att byta in varor då nya, motsvarande

köps (en mot en). Olämplig hantering av avfall av den här typen kan ha en negativ inverkan på miljön och människors hälsa på grund av de potentiellt farliga ämnen som kan återfinnas i elektrisk och elektronisk utrustning. Din medverkan till en korrekt avfallshantering av den här produkten bidrar dessutom till en effektiv användning av naturresurserna. Kontakta ditt lokala kommunkontor, berörd myndighet, företag för avfallshantering eller ta del av en godkänd WEEE-organisation om du vill ha mer information om var du kan lämna den kasserade produkten för återvinning. För mer information om inlämning och återvinning av WEEE-produkter, se [www.canon-europe.com/weee](http://www.canon-europe.com/weee).

## Pouze Evropská unie a EHP (Norsko, Island a Lichtenštejsko)



Tento symbol znamená, že podle směrnice o OEEZ (2012/19/EU) a podle vnitrostátních právních předpisů nemá být tento výrobek likvidován s odpadem z domácností. Tento výrobek má být vrácen do sběrného místa, např. v rámci autorizovaného systému odběru jednoho výrobku za jeden nově prodaný podobný výrobek nebo v autorizovaném sběrném místě pro recyklaci odpadních elektrických a elektronických zařízení (OEEZ). Nevhodné nakládání s tímto druhem odpadu by mohlo mít negativní dopad na životní prostředí a lidské zdraví, protože elektrická a elektronická zařízení zpravidla obsahují potenciálně nebezpečné látky. Vaše spolupráce na správné likvidaci tohoto výrobku současně napomůže efektivnímu využívání přírodních zdrojů. Další informace o místech sběru vašeho odpadního zařízení k recyklaci vám sdělí místní úřad vaší obce, správní orgán vykonávající dozor nad likvidací odpadu, sběrný OEEZ nebo služba pro odvoz komunálního odpadu. Další informace týkající se vracení a recyklace OEEZ naleznete na adrese [www.canon-europe.com/weee](http://www.canon-europe.com/weee).

## Csak az Európai Unió és az EGT (Norvégia, Izland és Liechtenstein) országában



Ez a szimbólum azt jelzi, hogy a helyi törvények és a WEEE-irányelv (2012/19/EU) szerint a termék nem kezelhető háztartási hulladékként. A terméket a kijelölt nyilvános gyűjtőpontokon kell leadni, például hasonló cserekészülék vásárlásakor, illetve bármelyik, elektromos és elektronikai berendezésekből származó hulladék (WEEE) átvételére feljogosított gyűjtőponton. Az ilyen jellegű hulladékok a nem megfelelő kezelés esetén a bennük található veszélyes anyagok révén ártalmasak lehetnek a környezetre és az emberek egészségére. Továbbá, a termékből származó hulladék megfelelő kezelésével hozzájárulhat a természetes nyersanyagok hatékonyabb hasznosításához. A berendezésekből származó, újrahasznosítható hulladékok elhelyezésére vonatkozó további tudnivalóért forduljon a helyi önkormányzathoz, a közterület-fenntartó vállalathoz, a háztartási hulladék begyűjtését végző vállalathoz, illetve a hivatalos WEEE-képviselőhöz. További tudnivalókat a WEEE-termékek visszajuttatásáról és újrahasznosításáról a [www.canon-europe.com/weee](http://www.canon-europe.com/weee).

## Tylko dla krajów Unii Europejskiej oraz EOG (Norwegia, Islandia i Liechtenstein)



Ten symbol oznacza, że zgodnie z dyrektywą WEEE dotyczącą zużytego sprzętu elektrycznego i elektronicznego (2012/19/UE) oraz przepisami lokalnymi nie należy wyrzucać tego produktu razem z odpadami gospodarstwa domowego. Produkt należy przekazać do wyznaczonego punktu gromadzenia odpadów, np. firmie, od której kupowany jest nowy, podobny produkt lub do autoryzowanego punktu gromadzenia zużytego sprzętu elektrycznego i elektronicznego w celu poddania go recyklingowi. Usuwanie tego typu odpadów w nieodpowiedni sposób może mieć negatywny wpływ na otoczenie i zdrowie innych osób ze względu na niebezpieczne substancje stosowane w takim sprzęcie. Jednocześnie pozbycie się zużytego sprzętu w zalecany sposób przyczynia się do właściwego wykorzystania zasobów naturalnych. Aby uzyskać więcej informacji na temat punktów, do których można dostarczyć sprzęt do recyklingu, prosimy skontaktować się z lokalnym urzędem miasta, zakładem utylizacji odpadów, skorzystać z instrukcji zatwierdzonej dyrektywą WEEE lub skontaktować się z przedsiębiorstwem zajmującym się wywozem odpadów domowych. Więcej informacji o zwracaniu i recyklingu zużytego sprzętu elektrycznego i elektronicznego znajduje się w witrynie [www.canon-europe.com/weee](http://www.canon-europe.com/weee).

## Plati len pre štáty Európskej únie a EHP (Nórsko, Island a Lichtenštajnsko)



Tento symbol znamená, že podľa Smernice 2012/19/EÚ o odpade z elektrických a elektronických zariadení (OEEZ) a podľa platnej legislatívy Slovenskej republiky sa tento produkt nesmie likvidovať spolu s komunálnym odpadom. Produkt je potrebné odovzdať do určenej zberne, napr. prostredníctvom výmeny za kúpu nového podobného produktu, alebo na autorizované zberné miesto, ktoré spracúva odpad z elektrických a elektronických zariadení (EEZ). Nesprávna manipulácia s takýmto typom odpadu môže mať negatívny vplyv na životné prostredie a ľudské zdravie, pretože elektrické a elektronické zariadenia obsahujú potenciálne nebezpečné látky. Spoluprácou na správnej likvidácii produktu prispějete k účinnému využívaniu prírodných zdrojov. Ďalšie informácie o mieste recyklácie opotrebovaných zariadení získate od miestneho úradu, úradu životného prostredia, zo schváleného plánu OEEZ alebo od spoločnosti, ktorá zaisťuje likvidáciu komunálneho odpadu. Viac informácií nájdete aj na webovej stránke: [www.canon-europe.com/weee](http://www.canon-europe.com/weee).

## Üksnes Euroopa Liit ja EMP (Norra, Island ja Liechtenstein)



See sümbol näitab, et antud toodet ei tohi vastavalt elektri- ja elektroonikaseadmete jäätmeid käsitlevale direktiivile (2012/19/EL) ning teie riigis kehtivatele õigusaktidele utiliseerida koos olmejäätmetega. Antud toode tuleb anda selleks määratud kogumispunkti, nt müügipunkt, mis on volitatud üks ühe vastu vahetama, kui ostate uue sarnase toote, või elektri- ja elektroonikaseadmete jäätmete ümbertöötlemiseks



mõeldud kogumispunkti. Täiendava teabe saamiseks elektri- ja elektroonikaseadmetest tekkinud jäätmete tagastamise ja ümbertöötlemise kohta võtke ühendust kohaliku omavalitsusega, asjakohase valitsusasutusega, asjakohase tootjavastutusorganisatsiooniga või olmejäätmete käitlejaga. Lisateavet leitate ka Interneti-leheküljelt [www.canon-europe.com/weee](http://www.canon-europe.com/weee).

## Tikai Eiropas Savienībai un EEZ (Norvēģijai, Islandei un Lihtenšteinai)



Šis simbols norāda, ka atbilstoši ES Direktīvai (2012/19/ES) par elektrisko un elektronisko iekārtu atkritumiem (EEIA) un vietējiem tiesību aktiem no šī izstrādājuma nedrīkst atbrīvoties, izmetot to kopā ar sadzīves atkritumiem. Šis izstrādājums ir jānodod piemērotā savākšanas vietā, piemēram, apstiprinātā veikalā, kur iegādājaties līdzīgu jaunu produktu un atstājat veco, vai apstiprinātā vietā izlietotu elektrisko un elektronisko iekārtu pārstrādei. Nepareiza šāda veida atkritumu apsaimniekošana var apdraudēt vidi un cilvēka veselību tādu iespējami bīstamu vielu dēļ, kas parasti ir elektriskajās un elektroniskajās iekārtās. Turklāt jūsu atbalsts pareizā šāda veida atkritumu apsaimniekošanā sekmēs efektīvu dabas resursu izmantošanu. Lai saņemtu pilnīgāku informāciju par vietām, kur izlietoto iekārtu var nodot pārstrādei, sazinieties ar vietējo pašvaldību, atkritumu savākšanas atbildīgo dienestu, pilnvarotu EEIA struktūru vai sadzīves atkritumu apsaimniekošanas iestādi. Lai saņemtu plašāku informāciju par elektrisko un elektronisko iekārtu nodošanu pārstrādei, apmeklējiet tīmekļa vietni [www.canon-europe.com/weee](http://www.canon-europe.com/weee).

## Tik Europos Sąjungai ir EEE (Norvegijai, Islandijai ir Lichtenšteinai)



Šis ženkla reiškia, kad gaminio negalima išmesti su buitinėmis atliekomis, kaip yra nustatyta Direktyvoje (2012/19/ES) ir nacionaliniuose teisė aktuose dėl EEJ atliekų tvarkymo. Šį gaminį reikia atiduoti į tam skirtą surinkimo punktą, pvz., pagal patvirtintą keitimo sistemą, kai perkamas panašus gaminys, arba į elektros ir elektroninės įrangos (EEJ) atliekų perdirbimo punktą. Netinkamas tokios rūšies atliekų tvarkymas dėl elektros ir elektroninėje įrangoje esančių pavojingų medžiagų gali pakenkti aplinkai ir žmonių sveikatai. Padėdami užtikrinti tinkamą šio gaminio šalinimo tvarką, kartu prisidėsite prie veiksmingo gamtos išteklių naudojimo. Jei reikia daugiau informacijos, kaip šalinti tokias atliekas, kad jos būtų toliau perdirbamos, kreipkitės į savo miesto valdžios institucijas, atliekų tvarkymo organizacijas, patvirtintų EEJ atliekų sistemų arba jūsų buitinių atliekų tvarkymo įstaigų atstovus. Išsamesnės informacijos apie EEJ atliekų grąžinimo ir perdirbimo tvarką galite rasti apsilankę tinklalapyje [www.canon-europe.com/weee](http://www.canon-europe.com/weee).

## Samo za Evropsko unijo in EGP (Norveška, Islandija in Lihtenštajn)



Ta simbol pomeni, da tega izdelka v skladu z direktivo OEE0 (2012/19/EU) in državno zakonodajo ne smete odvreči v gospodinjske odpadke. Ta izdelek morate odložiti na ustrezno zbiralno mesto, na primer pri pooblaščenem prodajalcu, ko kupite podoben nov izdelek ali na zbiralno mesto za recikliranje električne in elektronske opreme. Neprimerno ravnanje s takšnimi odpadki lahko negativno vpliva na okolje in človekovo zdravje zaradi nevarnih snovi, ki so povezane z električno in elektronsko opremo. S pravilno odstranitvijo izdelka hkrati prispevate tudi k učinkoviti porabi naravnih virov. Če želite več informacij o tem, kje lahko odložite odpadno opremo za recikliranje, pokličite občinski urad, komunalno podjetje ali službo, ki skrbi za odstranjevanje odpadkov, ali si oglejte načrt OEE0. Če želite več informacij o vračanju in recikliranju izdelkov v skladu z direktivo OEE0, obiščite [www.canon-europe.com/weee](http://www.canon-europe.com/weee).

## Само за Европейския съюз и ЕИП (Норвегия, Исландия и Лихтенщайн)



Този символ показва, че този продукт не трябва да се изхвърля заедно с битовите отпадъци, съгласно Директивата за ИУЕЕО (2012/19/ЕС) и Вашето национално законодателство. Този продукт трябва да бъде предаден в предназначен за целта пункт за събиране, например на база размяна, когато купувате нов подобен продукт, или в одобрен събирателен пункт за рециклиране на излязло от употреба електрическо и електронно оборудване (ИУЕЕО). Неправилното третиране на този тип отпадъци може да доведе до евентуални отрицателни последици за околната среда и човешкото здраве поради потенциално опасните вещества, които обикновено са свързани с ЕЕО. В същото време Вашето съдействие за правилното изхвърляне на този продукт ще допринесе за ефективното използване на природните ресурси. Повече информация относно местата, където може да предавате излязло от употреба оборудване за рециклиране, може да получите от местните власти, от органа, отговорен за отпадъците и от одобрена система за излязло от употреба ЕЕО или от Вашата местна служба за битови отпадъци. За повече информация относно връщането и рециклирането на продукти от излязло от употреба ЕЕО посетете [www.canon-europe.com/weee](http://www.canon-europe.com/weee).

## Doar pentru Uniunea Europeană și EEA (Norvegia, Islanda și Liechtenstein)



Acest simbol indică faptul că acest produs nu trebuie aruncat o dată cu reziduurile menajere, în conformitate cu Directiva DEEE (Directiva privind deșeurile de echipamente electrice și electronice) (2012/19/UE) și legile naționale. Acest produs trebuie transportat la un punct de colectare special, de exemplu un centru care preia produsele vechi atunci când achiziționați un produs nou similar, sau la un punct de colectare autorizat pentru reciclarea deșeurilor provenite de la echipamentele electrice și electronice (EEE). Mănuirea necorespunzătoare a acestor tipuri de deșeuri poate avea un impact negativ asupra mediului înconjurător și sănătății indivizilor, din cauza substanțelor potențial nocive care sunt în general asociate cu EEE. În același timp, cooperarea dvs. la reciclarea corectă a acestui produs va contribui la utilizarea efectivă a resurselor naturale. Pentru mai multe informații privind locurile de reciclare a deșeurilor provenite de la echipamente, contactați biroul primăriei locale, autoritatea responsabilă cu colectarea deșeurilor, schema DEEE aprobată sau serviciul de colectare a deșeurilor menajere. Pentru

mai multe informații privind returnarea și reciclarea produselor DEEE, vizitați [www.canon-europe.com/weee](http://www.canon-europe.com/weee).

## Samo za Europsku uniju i EEZ (Norveška, Island i Lihtenštajn)



Ovaj simbol pokazuje da se ovaj proizvod ne smije odlagati s kućnim otpadom sukladno WEEE Direktivi (2012/19/EC) i vašem nacionalnom zakonu. Ovaj proizvod je potrebno predati na posebno mjesto za sakupljanje otpada, npr. na ovlašteno mjesto gdje možete zamijeniti staro za novo ukoliko kupujete novi sličan proizvod ili na ovlašteno mjesto za sakupljanje rabljene električne i elektroničke opreme (EEE) za recikliranje. Nepropropisno rukovanje ovom vrstom otpada može imati negativan učinak na okolinu i zdravlje ljudi zbog supstanci koje su potencijalno opasne za zdravlje, a općenito se povezuju s EEE. Istovremeno, vaša će suradnja kroz propisno odlaganje ovog proizvoda doprinijeti efektivnoj uporabi prirodnih resursa. Za više informacija o tome gdje možete odložiti svoj otpad za recikliranje obratite se vašem lokalnom gradskom uredu, komunalnoj službi, odobrenom WEEE programu ili službi za odlaganje kućnog otpada. Ostale informacije o vraćanju i recikliranju WEEE proizvoda potražite na [www.canon-europe.com/weee](http://www.canon-europe.com/weee).

## Korisnici u Srbiji



Ovaj simbol označava da ovaj proizvod ne sme da se odlaže sa ostalim kućnim otpadom, u skladu sa WEEE Direktivom (2012/19/EU) i nacionalnim zakonima. Ovaj proizvod treba predati određenom centru za prikupljanje, npr. na osnovi "jedan-za-jedan" kada kupujete sličan novi proizvod, ili ovlašćenom centru za prikupljanje za reciklažu istrošene električne i elektronske opreme (EEE). Nepravilno rukovanje ovom vrstom otpada može da ima moguće negativne posledice po životnu sredinu i ljudsko zdravlje usled potencijalno opasnih materijala koji se uglavnom vezuju za EEE. U isto vreme, vaša saradnja na ispravnom odlaganju ovog proizvoda će doprineti efikasnom korišćenju prirodnih resursa. Za više informacija o tome gde možete da predate vašu staru opremu radi recikliranja, vas molimo, da kontaktirate lokalne gradske vlasti, komunalne službe, odobreni plan reciklaže ili Gradsku čistoću. Za više informacija o vraćanju i recikliranju WEEE proizvoda, posetite stranicu [www.canon-europe.com/weee](http://www.canon-europe.com/weee).

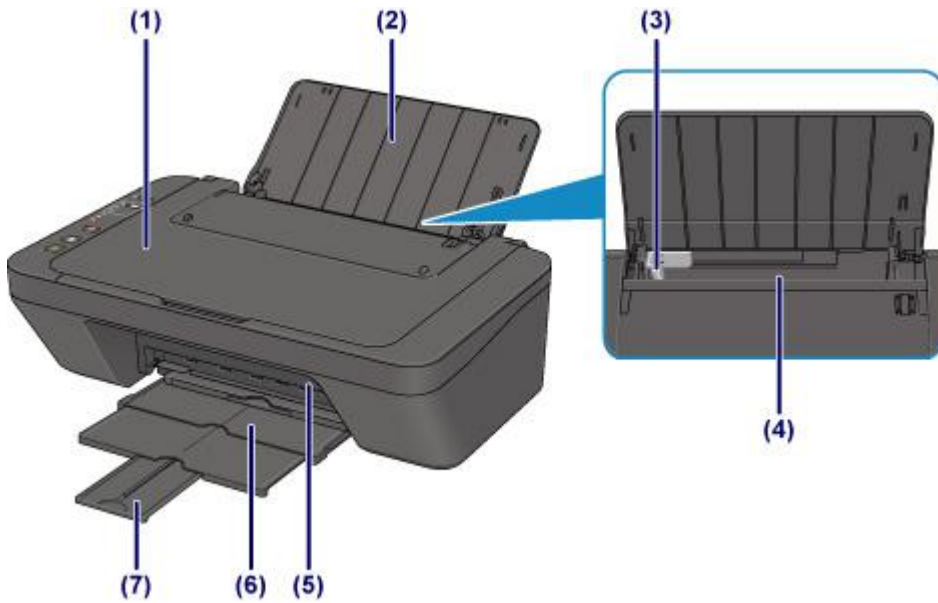
## **Main Components and Their Use**

- ▶ **Main Components**
- ▶ **Power Supply**

## **Main Components**

- ▶ **Front View**
- ▶ **Rear View**
- ▶ **Inside View**
- ▶ **Operation Panel**

## Front View



**(1) document cover**

Open to load an original on the platen glass.

**(2) paper support**

Open to load paper in the rear tray.

**(3) paper guide**

Align with the left side of the paper stack.

**(4) rear tray**

Load paper here. Two or more sheets of the same size and type of paper can be loaded at the same time, and fed automatically one sheet at a time.

■ [Loading Plain Paper / Photo Paper](#)

■ [Loading Envelopes](#)

**(5) cover**

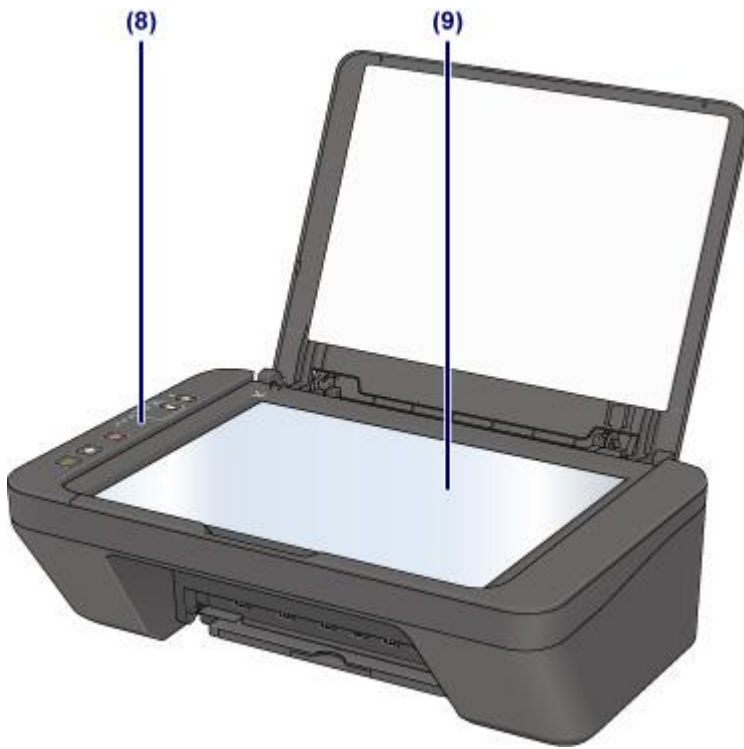
Open to replace the FINE cartridge or remove jammed paper inside the printer.

**(6) paper output tray**

Printed paper is ejected. Pull out it before printing.

**(7) output tray extension**

Extend to support ejected paper. Extend it when printing.



**(8) operation panel**

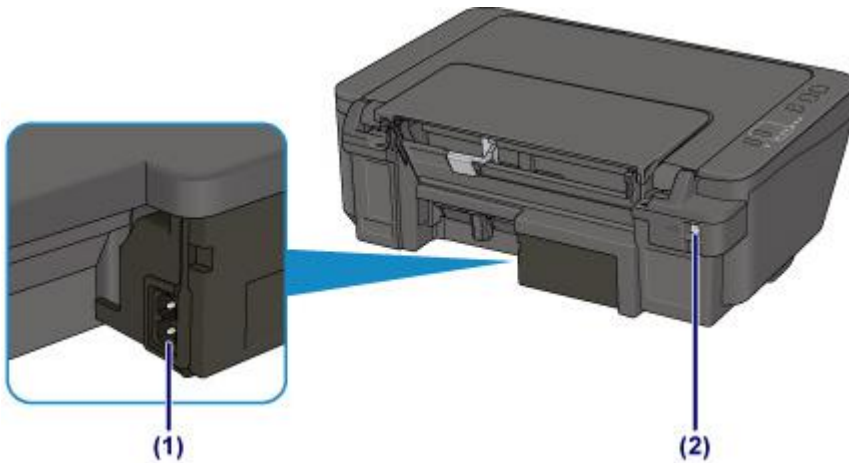
Use to change the settings of the printer or to operate it.

■ [Operation Panel](#)

**(9) platen glass**

Load an original here.

## Rear View



**(1) power cord connector**

Plug in the supplied power cord.

**(2) USB port**

Plug in the USB cable to connect the printer with a computer.

**▶▶ Important**

- Do not touch the metal casing.
- Do not plug in or unplug the USB cable while the printer is printing or scanning originals with the computer.



## Inside View



### (1) FINE cartridge (ink cartridges)

A replaceable cartridge that integrates print head and ink tank.

### (2) FINE cartridge holder

Install the FINE cartridge.

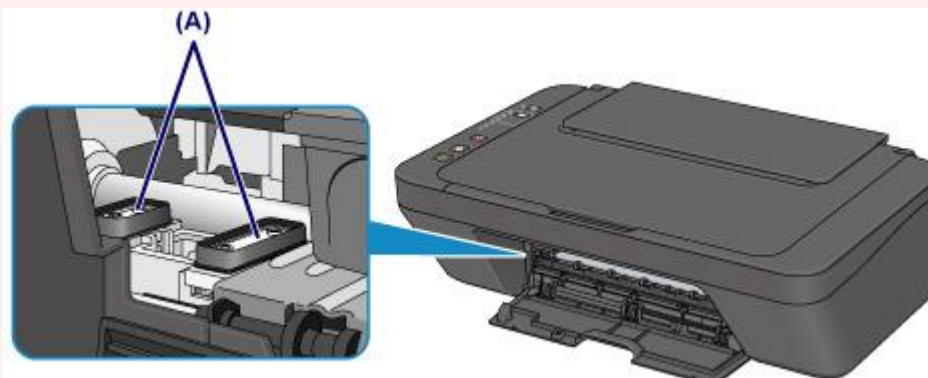
The color FINE cartridge should be installed into the left slot and the black FINE cartridge should be installed into the right slot.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- For details on replacing a FINE cartridge, see [Replacing a FINE Cartridge](#).

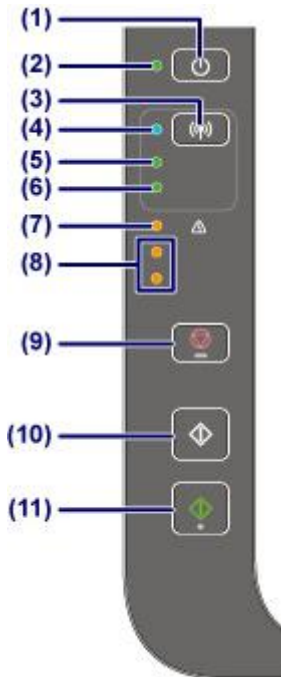
### ▶▶▶ Important

- The area around the parts (A) may be splattered with ink. This does not affect the performance of the printer.
- Do not touch the parts (A). The printer may not print properly if you touch them.



# Operation Panel

\* All lamps on the operation panel are shown lit in the figure below for explanatory purposes.



## (1) ON button

Turns the power on or off. Before turning on the power, make sure that the document cover is closed.

## (2) ON lamp

Lights after flashing when the power is turned on.

## ►► Note

- You can check the status of the printer by the **ON** and **Alarm** lamps.
  - **ON** lamp is off: The power is off.
  - **ON** lamp lights: The printer is ready to print.
  - **ON** lamp flashes: The printer is getting ready to print, or printing is in progress.
  - **Alarm** lamp flashes: An error has occurred and the printer is not ready to print.
  - **ON** lamp flashes and **Alarm** lamp flashes alternately: An error that requires contacting the service center may have occurred.

■ [An Error Occurs](#)

## (3) Wi-Fi button

Hold down to automatically set up the wireless connection. You can also press this button to switch the wireless connection method.

## (4) Wi-Fi lamp

Lights or flashes to indicate the wireless LAN status.

### Lights:

Wireless LAN is enabled. Also lights when the printer is connected to the wireless router.

**Flashes:**

Printing or scanning over wireless LAN. Also flashes while configuring the wireless LAN connection.

**▶▶▶ Note**

- If this lamp is off, the printer is not connected to the wireless router. In addition to enabling wireless LAN, check the network environment.

**(5) Network lamp**

Lights when the wireless LAN is enabled.

**(6) Direct lamp**

Lights when Wireless Direct is enabled.

**(7) Alarm lamp**

Lights or flashes when an error occurs. When performing printer maintenance or printer settings, options can be selected according to the number of flashes.

**(8) ink lamps**

Light or flash when ink runs out, etc.

The upper lamp indicates the black FINE cartridge status, the lower lamp the color FINE cartridge status.

**(9) Stop button**

Cancels operations. You can press this button to cancel a print, copy, or scan job in progress. Holding this button down lets you select maintenance options or printer settings.

**(10) Black button\***

Starts black & white copying. You can also press this button to finalize your selection for the setting item.

**(11) Color button\***

Starts color copying. You can also press this button to finalize your selection for the setting item.

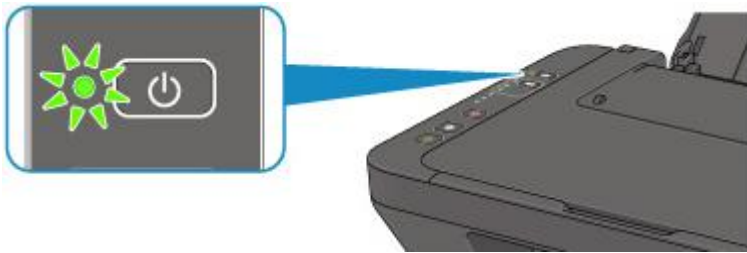
\* In the software applications or manuals, the **Color** and **Black** buttons are collectively called the "Start" or "OK" button.

## **Power Supply**

- **Confirming that the Power Is On**
- **Turning the Printer On and Off**
- **Checking the Power Plug/Power Cord**
- **Unplugging the Printer**

## Confirming that the Power Is On

The **ON** lamp is lit when the printer is turned on.



### ▶▶ Note

- It may take a while for the printer to start printing immediately after you turn on the printer.

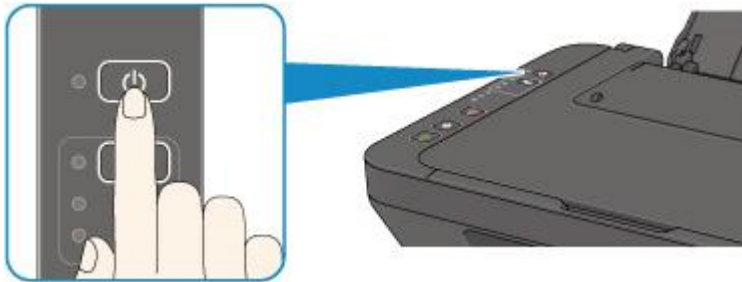
# Turning the Printer On and Off

## Turning on the printer

1. Press the **ON** button to turn on the printer.

The **ON** lamp flashes and then remains lit.

### ■ [Confirming that the Power Is On](#)



### ▶▶▶ **Note**

- It may take a while for the printer to start printing immediately after you turn on the printer.
- If the **Alarm** lamp lights up or flashes, see [An Error Occurs](#).
- You can set the printer to automatically turn on when a print or scan operation is performed from a computer connected by USB cable or wireless network. This feature is set to off by default. For details on the auto power on feature, see below.

From the printer

### ■ [Turning on/off Printer Automatically](#)

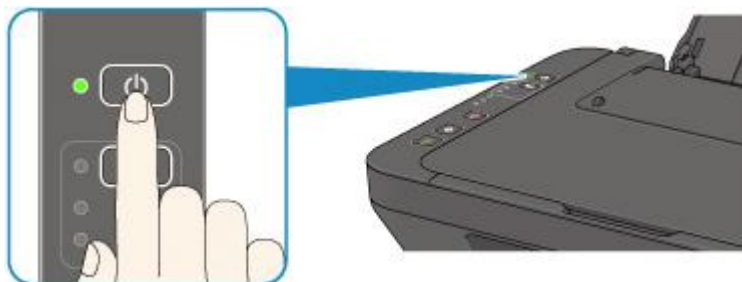
From the computer

- For Windows:
  - [Managing the Printer Power](#)
- For Mac OS:
  - [Managing the Printer Power](#)

## Turning off the printer

1. Press the **ON** button to turn off the printer.

When the **ON** lamp stops flashing, the printer is turned off.



## ▶▶▶ Important

- When you [unplug the power cord](#) after turning off the printer, be sure to confirm that the **ON** lamp is off.

## ▶▶▶ Note

- You can set the printer to automatically turn off when no operations are performed or no print jobs are sent to the printer for a certain interval. This is the default setting. For details on the auto power off feature, see below.

From the printer

- [Turning on/off Printer Automatically](#)

From the computer

- For Windows:
  - [Managing the Printer Power](#)
- For Mac OS:
  - [Managing the Printer Power](#)

## Checking the Power Plug/Power Cord

Unplug the power cord once a month to confirm that the power plug/power cord does not have anything unusual described below.

- The power plug/power cord is hot.
- The power plug/power cord is rusty.
- The power plug/power cord is bent.
- The power plug/power cord is worn.
- The power plug/power cord is split.

### **Caution**

- If you find anything unusual with the power plug/power cord described above, [Unplugging the Printer](#) and call for service. Using the printer with one of the unusual conditions above may cause a fire or an electric shock.



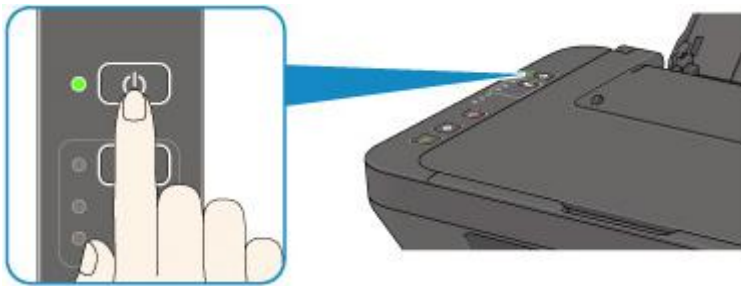
# Unplugging the Printer

To unplug the power cord, follow the procedure below.

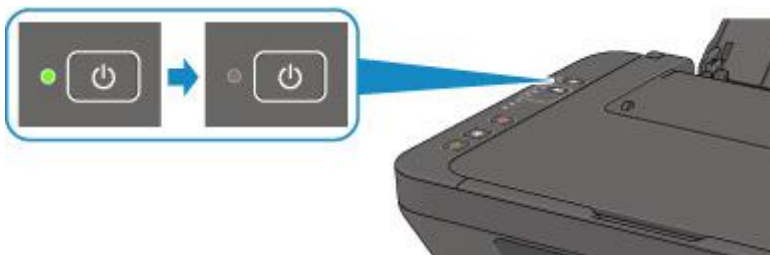
## ▶▶▶ Important

- When you unplug the power cord, press the **ON** button, then confirm that the **ON** lamp is off. Unplugging the power cord while the **ON** lamp is lit or flashing may cause drying or clogging of the print head and print quality may be reduced.

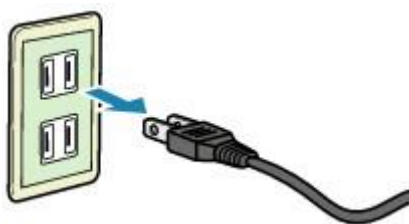
1. Press the **ON** button to turn the printer off.



2. Confirm that the **ON** lamp is off.



3. Unplug the power cord.



The specification of the power cord differs depending on the country or region of use.

## **Changing Settings**

- ▶ **Changing Printer Settings from Your Computer (Windows)**
- ▶ **Changing Printer Settings from Your Computer (Mac OS)**
- ▶ **Changing Settings from Operation Panel**
- ▶ **Changing Printer's Setting Using Web Browser**

## **Changing Printer Settings from Your Computer (Windows)**

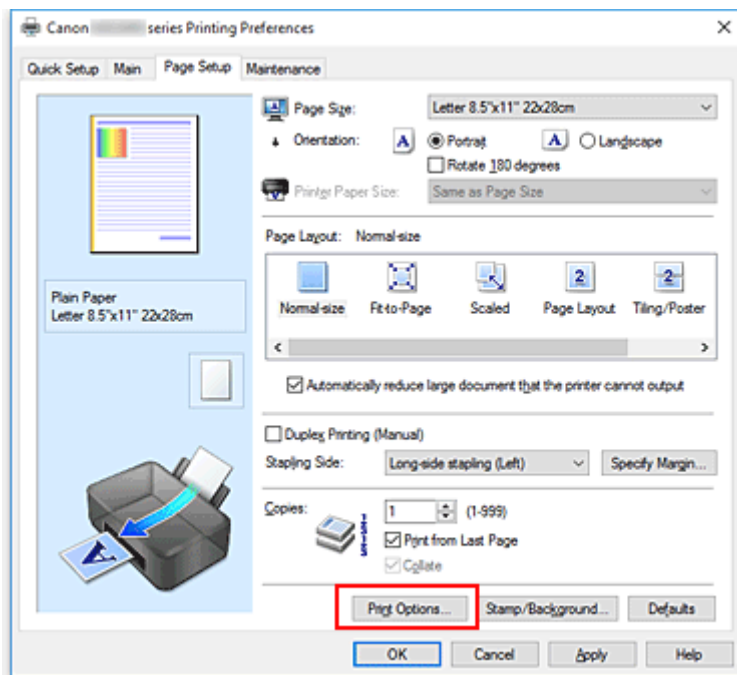
- **Changing the Print Options**
- **Registering a Frequently Used Printing Profile**
- **Setting the Ink Cartridge to be Used**
- **Managing the Printer Power**
- **Changing the Printer Operation Mode**

## Changing the Print Options

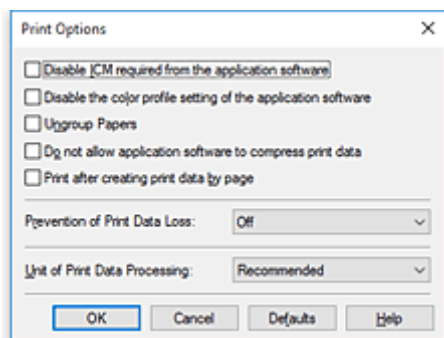
You can change the detailed printer driver settings for print data that is sent from an application software. Specify this option if you encounter print failures such as part of an image data being cut off.

The procedure for changing the print options is as follows:

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)
2. Click **Print Options...** on the **Page Setup** tab



The **Print Options** dialog box opens.



### ▶▶▶ Note

- When you use the XPS printer driver, the functions available to you are different.

3. Change the individual settings

If necessary, change the setting of each item, and then click **OK**.

The **Page Setup** tab is displayed again.

## Registering a Frequently Used Printing Profile

You can register the frequently used printing profile to **Commonly Used Settings** on the **Quick Setup** tab. Unnecessary printing profiles can be deleted at any time.

The procedure for registering a printing profile is as follows:

### Registering a Printing Profile

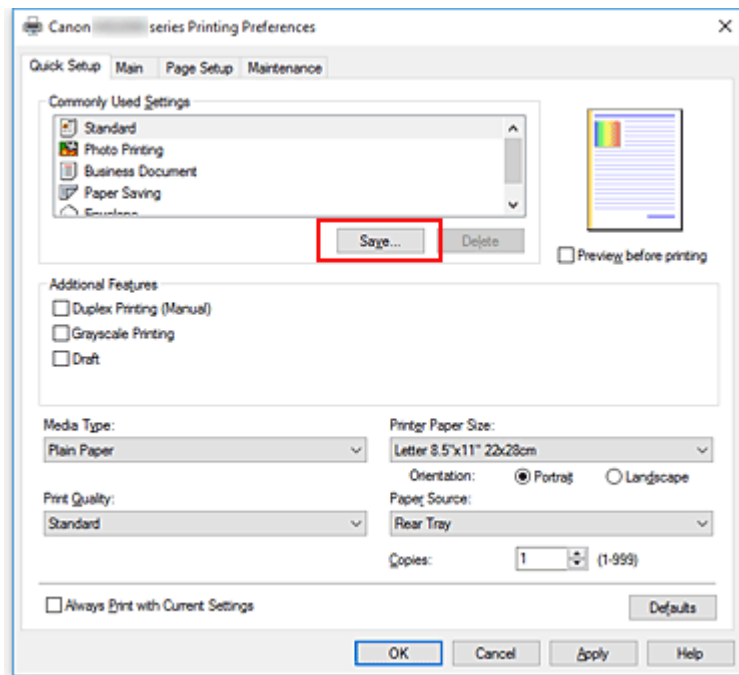
1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

2. Set the necessary items

From **Commonly Used Settings** on the **Quick Setup** tab, select the printing profile to be used and if necessary, change the settings after **Additional Features**.

You can also register necessary items on the **Main** and **Page Setup** tabs.

3. Click **Save...**



The **Save Commonly Used Settings** dialog box opens.



4. Save the settings

Enter a name in the **Name** field. If necessary, click **Options...**, set the items, and then click **OK**.

In the **Save Commonly Used Settings** dialog box, click **OK** to save the print settings and return to the **Quick Setup** tab.

The name and icon are displayed in **Commonly Used Settings**.

### ▶▶▶ Important

- To save the page size, orientation, and number of copies that was set in each sheet, click **Options...**, and check each item.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- When you re-install the printer driver or upgrade the printer driver version, the print settings that are already registered will be deleted from **Commonly Used Settings**. Registered print settings cannot be saved and preserved. If a profile is deleted, register the print settings again.

## Deleting Unnecessary Printing Profile

1. Select the printing profile to be deleted

Select the printing profile you want to delete from the **Commonly Used Settings** list on the **Quick Setup** tab.

2. Delete the printing profile

Click **Delete**. When the confirmation message appears, click **OK**.

The selected printing profile is deleted from the **Commonly Used Settings** list.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- Printing profiles that are registered in the initial settings cannot be deleted.

## Setting the Ink Cartridge to be Used

This feature enables you to specify the most appropriate FINE cartridge among installed cartridges according to an intended use.

When one of the FINE cartridges becomes empty and cannot be replaced immediately by a new one, you can specify the other FINE cartridge that still has ink and continue printing.

The procedure for specifying the FINE cartridge is as follows:



### Ink Cartridge Settings

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)
2. Click **Ink Cartridge Settings** on the **Maintenance** tab

The **Ink Cartridge Settings** dialog box appears.

3. Select the FINE cartridge to be used

Select the FINE cartridge to be used for printing and click **OK**.

The specified FINE cartridge will be used from the next printing.

### ►► Important

- When a setting other than **Plain Paper** or **Envelope** is selected for **Media Type** on the **Main** tab, **Black Only** is disabled because the printer uses the color FINE cartridge to print documents.
- Do not detach the FINE cartridge that is not in use. Printing cannot be performed while either FINE cartridge is detached.

## Managing the Printer Power

This function allows you to manage the printer power from the printer driver.

The procedure for managing the printer power is as follows:



### Power Off

The **Power Off** function turns off the printer. When you use this function, you will not be able to turn the printer on from the printer driver.

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)
2. Execute power off

Click **Power Off** on the **Maintenance** tab. When the confirmation message appears, click **OK**.

The printer power switches off, and the **Maintenance** tab is displayed again.



### Auto Power

**Auto Power** allows you to set **Auto Power On** and **Auto Power Off**.

The **Auto Power On** function automatically turns on the printer when data is received.

The **Auto Power Off** function automatically turns off the printer when there are no operations from the printer driver or the printer for a specified period of time.

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)
2. Make sure that the printer is on and then click **Auto Power** on the **Maintenance** tab

The **Auto Power Settings** dialog box opens.

#### ▶▶▶ Note

- If the printer is off or if communication between the printer and the computer is disabled, an error message may appear because the computer cannot collect the printer status. If this happens, click **OK** to display the most recent settings specified on your computer.

3. If necessary, complete the following settings:

#### **Auto Power On**

Specifying **Enable** from the list will turn the printer on upon receipt of print data.

#### **Auto Power Off**

Specify the time from the list. When this time lapses without any operations from the printer driver or the printer, the printer is turned off automatically.

4. Apply the settings



Click **OK**. When the confirmation message appears, click **OK**.

The **Maintenance** tab is displayed again.

The setting is enabled after this. When you want to disable this function, select **Disable** from the list according to the same procedure.

### ▶▶ Note

- When the printer is turned off, the Canon IJ Status Monitor message varies depending on the **Auto Power On** setting.  
When the setting is **Enable**, "Printer is standing by" is displayed. When the setting is **Disable**, "Printer is offline" is displayed.

# Changing the Printer Operation Mode

If necessary, switch between various modes of printer operation.

The procedure for configuring **Custom Settings** is as follows:



## Custom Settings

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)
2. Make sure that the printer is on, and then click **Custom Settings** on the **Maintenance** tab

The **Custom Settings** dialog box opens.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- If the printer is off or if communication between the printer and the computer is disabled, an error message may appear because the computer cannot collect the printer status. If this happens, click **OK** to display the most recent settings specified on your computer.

3. If necessary, complete the following settings:

#### Align heads manually

Usually, the **Print Head Alignment** function on the **Maintenance** tab is set to automatic head alignment, but you can change it to manual head alignment.

If the printing results of automatic print head alignment are not satisfactory, perform manual head alignment.

Check this check box to perform the manual head alignment. Uncheck this check box to perform the automatic head alignment.

#### Rotate 90 degrees left when orientation is [Landscape]

On the **Page Setup** tab, you can change the rotation direction of the **Landscape** in the **Orientation**.

To rotate the print data 90 degrees to the left during printing, select this item. To rotate the print data 90 degrees to the right during printing, clear this item.

### ▶▶▶ Important

- Do not change this setting while the print job is displayed in the print wait list. Otherwise, characters may be omitted or the layout may become corrupt.

#### Detect the paper width when printing from computer

When you print from the computer, this function identifies the paper that was loaded into this printer.

When the paper width detected by the printer differs from the width of the paper specified in **Page Size** on the **Page Setup** tab, a message is displayed.

To use paper width detection when printing from the computer, select the check box.

## Important

- If you are using user-defined paper, use the **Custom Paper Size** to correctly set the size of the paper loaded in the printer.  
If an error message is displayed even though the same size that was set is loaded, clear the check box.

### **Ink Drying Wait Time**

You can set the length of the printer rest time until printing of the next page begins. Moving the slider to the right increases the pause time, and moving the slider to the left decreases the time.

If the paper gets stained because the next page is ejected before the ink on the printed page dries, increase the ink drying wait time.

Reducing the ink drying wait time speeds up printing.

#### 4. Apply the settings

Click **OK** and when the confirmation message appears, click **OK**.

The printer operates with the modified settings hereafter.

## Changing Settings from Operation Panel

- ▶ Quiet setting
- ▶ Turning on/off Printer Automatically
- ▶ Initializing Printer Settings
- ▶ Switching/Disabling Wireless Connection Function

## Turning on/off Printer Automatically

You can enable the printer to turn on/off automatically considering the environment

■ [Turning on Printer Automatically](#)

■ [Turning off Printer Automatically](#)

### Turning on Printer Automatically

You can enable the printer to turn on automatically when you perform printing or scanning operations from the computer.

1. [Make sure that the printer is turned on.](#)
2. Press and hold the **Stop** button until the **Alarm** lamp flashes 14 times.
3. Release the **Stop** button.
4. Press the **Color** button.

To disable the function, press the **Black** button in step 4.

#### ▶▶▶ Note

- You can select whether you turn the printer on automatically from the operation panel of the printer, the printer driver, or ScanGear (scanner driver). No matter how you set the quiet mode, the mode is applied when you perform printing or scanning operations from the computer.

### Turning off Printer Automatically

You can enable the printer to turn off automatically when no operation is made or no printing data is sent to the printer for a specified period of time.

1. [Make sure that the printer is turned on.](#)
2. Press and hold the **Stop** button until the **Alarm** lamp flashes 13 times.
3. Release the **Stop** button.
4. Press the **Color** button.

To disable the function, press the **Black** button in step 4.

#### ▶▶▶ Note

- You can select whether you turn off the printer automatically from the operation panel of the printer, the printer driver, or ScanGear (scanner driver). From the printer driver or ScanGear (scanner driver), you can specify the time before turning off the printer.

# Initializing Printer Settings

You can initialize the printer settings.

## ▶▶ Important

- When using the printer over wireless LAN, note that initialization erases all network settings on the printer, and printing operation from a computer over network may become impossible. To use the printer over network, perform setup with the Setup CD-ROM or perform it according to the instructions on our website.

Follow the procedure below to initialize the printer settings.

1. [Make sure that the printer is turned on.](#)
2. Press and hold the **Stop** button until the **Alarm** lamp flashes 21 times.
3. Release the **Stop** button.

All the printer settings are initialized. The administrator password specified by Remote UI or IJ Network Device Setup Utility reverts to the default setting.

## ▶▶ Note

- You cannot initialize the current position of the print head.

## Switching/Disabling Wireless Connection Function

Follow the procedure below to switch the wireless connection function or to disable it.

1. [Make sure that the printer is turned on.](#)

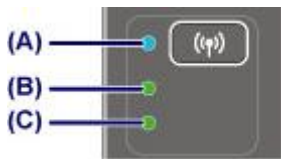
2. Press and hold the **Wi-Fi** button and release it when the **Wi-Fi** lamp flashes.

3. Press the **Black** button.

The **ON** lamp flashes and the **Wi-Fi** lamp lights.

4. Press the **Wi-Fi** button repeatedly to switch the wireless connection function or to disable it.

You can check the wireless connection setting by the **Network** lamp and the **Direct** lamp.



**(A) Wi-Fi lamp**

**(B) Network lamp**

Indicates the wireless LAN setting.

**Lights:**

Wireless LAN is enabled.

**Off:**

Wireless LAN is disabled.

**(C) Direct lamp**

Indicates the wireless direct setting.

**Lights:**

Wireless direct is enabled.

**Off:**

Wireless direct is disabled.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- When both the **Network** lamp and the **Direct** lamp are off, the wireless connection function is disabled.

5. Press the **Color** button or the **Black** button to finalize selection.

## Network Connection

- ▶ [Network Connection Tips](#)



## **Network Connection Tips**

- ▶ **Default Network Settings**
- ▶ **Another Printer Found with Same Name**
- ▶ **Connecting to Another Computer via LAN/Changing from USB to LAN Connection**
- ▶ **Printing Network Settings**
- ▶ **Changing Wireless LAN Connection Method**

# Default Network Settings

## LAN Connection Defaults

Item	Default
Change LAN	Disable LAN
SSID	BJNPSETUP
Wireless LAN security	Disable
IP address (IPv4)	Auto setup
IP address (IPv6)	Auto setup
Set printer name*	XXXXXXXXXXXX
Enable/disable IPv6	Enable
Enable/disable WSD	Enable
Timeout setting	15 minutes
Enable/disable Bonjour	Enable
Service name	Canon MG3000 series
LPR protocol setting	Enable
RAW protocol	Enable
LLMNR	Active
PictBridge communication	Enable
Wireless LAN DRX	Enable

("XX" represents alphanumeric characters.)

## Wireless Direct Defaults

Item	Default
SSID (Identifier for Wireless Direct)	XXXXXX-MG3000series *
Password	Printer serial number
Wireless LAN security	WPA2-PSK (AES)

\*(XXXXXX is the last six digits of MAC address of the printer.)

## Another Printer Found with Same Name

When the printer is found during setup, other printers with the same name may appear on the results screen.

Select a printer with checking the printer settings against those on detection result screen.

- For Windows:

Check the printer's MAC address or serial to select the correct printer from the results.

- For Mac OS:

The printer names appear with the MAC address added at the end or as the printer name specified by Bonjour.

Check identifiers such as the MAC address, the printer name specified by Bonjour, and the printer's serial number to select the printer from among those that appear.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- Serial number may not appear on result screen.

To check the printer's MAC address and the serial number, print out the network settings information using the operation panel.

- [Printing Network Settings](#)

## Connecting to Another Computer via LAN/Changing from USB to LAN Connection

■ [For Windows:](#)

■ [For Mac OS:](#)

### **For Windows:**

To add a computer to connect to the printer on a LAN or to change from USB to LAN connection, perform setup using the Setup CD-ROM or follow the instructions on the Canon website.

### **For Mac OS:**

To connect an additional computer to the printer via LAN, or to change from USB to LAN connection, follow the instructions on the Canon website.

# Printing Network Settings

Use the operation panel to print the printer's current network settings.

## ▶▶▶ Important

- The network settings printout contains important information about your network. Handle it with care.

1. [Make sure printer is turned on.](#)
2. [Load a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper.](#)
3. Press and hold **Wi-Fi** button and release it when **Wi-Fi** lamp flashes.
4. Press **Color** button.
5. Press **Wi-Fi** button twice.
6. Press **Color** button or **Black** button.

The printer starts printing the network setting information.

The following information on the printer's network setting is printed out. (Some setting values are not displayed depending on the printer settings.)

Item	Description	Setting
Product Information	Product information	–
Product Name	Product name	XXXXXXXX
ROM Version	ROM version	XXXXXXXX
Serial Number	Serial number	XXXXXXXX
Wireless LAN	Wireless LAN	Enable/Disable
WPS PIN CODE	WPS PIN code	XXXXXXXX
Infrastructure	Infrastructure	Enable/Disable
MAC Address	MAC address	XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX
Connection	Connection status	Active/Inactive
SSID	SSID	Wireless LAN SSID
Channel	Channel	XX (1 to 11)
Encryption	Encryption method	None/WEP/TKIP/AES
WEP Key Length	WEP key length (bits)	Inactive/128/64

Authentication	Authentication method	None/auto/open/shared/WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK
Signal Strength	Signal strength	0 to 100 [%]
TCP/IPv4	TCP/IPv4	Enable
IP Address	IP address	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
Subnet Mask	Subnet mask	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
Default Gateway	Default gateway	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
TCP/IPv6	TCP/IPv6	Enable/Disable
Link Local Address	Link local address	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
Link Local Prefix Length	Link local prefix length	XXX
Stateless Address1	Stateless address 1	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
Stateless Prefix Length1	Stateless prefix length 1	XXX
Stateless Address2	Stateless address 2	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
Stateless Prefix Length2	Stateless prefix length 2	XXX
Stateless Address3	Stateless address 3	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
Stateless Prefix Length3	Stateless prefix length 3	XXX
Stateless Address4	Stateless address 4	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
Stateless Prefix Length4	Stateless prefix length 4	XXX
Default Gateway1	Default gateway 1	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
Default Gateway2	Default gateway 2	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
Default Gateway3	Default gateway 3	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
Default Gateway4	Default gateway 4	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
IPsec	IPsec setting	Active
Security Protocol	Security method	ESP/ESP & AH/AH

Wireless Direct	Wireless Direct	Enable/Disable
MAC Address	MAC address	XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX
Connection	Connection status	Active/Inactive
SSID	SSID	Wireless Direct SSID
Password	Password	Wireless Direct password (10 alphanumeric characters)
Channel	Channel	3
Encryption	Encryption method	AES
Authentication	Authentication method	WPA2-PSK
TCP/IPv4	TCP/IPv4	Enable
IP Address	IP address	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
Subnet Mask	Subnet mask	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
Default Gateway	Default gateway	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
TCP/IPv6	TCP/IPv6	Enable/Disable
Link Local Address	Link local address	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
Link Local Prefix Length	Link local prefix length	XXX
IPsec	IPsec setting	Active
Security Protocol	Security method	–
Other Settings	Other settings	–
Printer Name	Printer name	Printer name (Up to 15 alphanumeric characters)
WSD Printing	WSD printing setting	Enable/Disable
WSD Timeout	Timeout	1/5/10/15/20 [min]
LPD Printing	LPD printing setting	Enable/Disable
RAW Printing	RAW printing setting	Enable/Disable
Bonjour	Bonjour setting	Enable/Disable
Bonjour Service Name	Bonjour service name	Bonjour service name (Up to 52 alphanumeric characters)
LLMNR	LLMNR setting	Enable/Disable
SNMP	SNMP setting	Enable/Disable

PictBridge Commun.	PictBridge Communication	Enable/Disable
DNS Server	Obtain DNS server address automatically	Auto/Manual
Primary Server	Primary server address	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
Secondary Server	Secondary server address	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
Proxy Server	Proxy server setting	Enable/Disable
Proxy Address	Proxy address	XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
Proxy Port	Proxy port specification	1 to 65535
Cert. Fingerprt(SHA-1)	Certificate fingerprint(SHA-1)	XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX
Cert. Fingerprt(SHA-256)	Certificate fingerprint(SHA-256)	XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX

("XX" represents alphanumeric characters.)



## Changing Wireless LAN Connection Method

Follow either procedure below to change wireless LAN connection method (infrastructure or Wireless Direct).

- **For Windows:**

- Use the Setup CD-ROM or follow the instructions on the Canon website to redo setup.
- Perform settings on the **Network Settings** screen on IJ Network Device Setup Utility.

### **Important**

- Before you perform settings using IJ Network Device Setup Utility, turn on Easy wireless connect mode on the printer following the procedure below.

1. [Make sure printer is turned on.](#)
2. Press and hold **Wi-Fi** button and release it when **Wi-Fi** lamp flashes.
3. Press **Color** button.
4. Press **Wi-Fi** button once.
5. Press **Color** button or **Black** button.

The printer enters Easy wireless connect mode.

6. Follow instructions on your smartphone or tablet.

- **For Mac OS:**

Follow the instructions on the Canon website to redo setup.

## Ensuring Optimal Printing Results

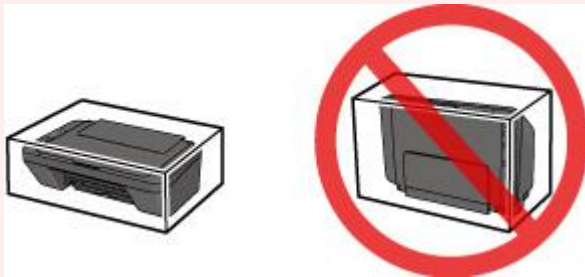
- ▶ Ink Tips
- ▶ Printing Tips
- ▶ Be Sure to Make Paper Settings after Loading Paper
- ▶ Canceling Print Jobs
- ▶ Printer Handling Precautions
- ▶ Keeping Print Quality High
- ▶ [Transporting Your Printer](#)

## Transporting Your Printer

When relocating the printer, make sure of the following.

### ▶▶▶ Important

- Pack the printer in a sturdy box so that it is placed with its bottom facing down, using sufficient protective material to ensure safe transport.
- With the FINE cartridge left installed in the printer, press the **ON** button to turn off the power. This allows the printer to automatically cap the print head, thus preventing it from drying.
- After packing, do not tilt the box containing the printer or turn it on its side or upside down. Doing so may cause the ink to leak during transport and cause damage to the printer.
- When a shipping agent is handling transport of the printer, have its box marked "THIS SIDE UP" to keep the printer with its bottom facing down. Mark also with "FRAGILE" or "HANDLE WITH CARE".



1. Turn the printer off.
2. Confirm that the **ON** lamp is off and [unplugging the power cord](#).

### ▶▶▶ Important

- Do not unplug the printer while the **ON** lamp is lit or flashing, as it may cause malfunction or damage to the printer, making the printer unable to print.

3. Retract the paper output tray and the output tray extension, then close the paper support.
4. Unplug the printer cable from the computer and from the printer, then unplug the power cord from the printer.
5. Use adhesive tape to secure all the covers on the printer to keep them from opening during transportation. Then pack the printer in the plastic bag.
6. Attach the protective material to the printer when packing the printer in the box.

## Legal Restrictions on Scanning/Copying

Scanning, printing, copying, or modifying copies of the following may be punishable under law.

This list is non-exhaustive. When in doubt, check with a local legal representative.

- Paper money
- Money orders
- Certificates of deposit
- Postage stamps (canceled or uncanceled)
- Identification badges or insignia
- Selective service or draft papers
- Checks or drafts issued by governmental agencies
- Motor vehicle licenses and certificates of title
- Traveler's checks
- Food stamps
- Passports
- Immigration papers
- Internal revenue stamps (canceled or uncanceled)
- Bonds or other certificates of indebtedness
- Stock certificates
- Copyrighted works or works of art, without the owner's consent

# Specifications

## General Specifications

<b>Printing resolution (dpi)</b>	4800* (horizontal) x 600 (vertical) * Ink droplets can be placed with a pitch of 1/4800 inch at minimum.
<b>Interface</b>	<b>USB Port:</b> Hi-Speed USB *1 <b>LAN Port:</b> Wireless LAN: IEEE802.11n / IEEE802.11g / IEEE802.11b *2 *1 A computer that complies with Hi-Speed USB standard is required. Since the Hi-Speed USB interface is fully upwardly compatible with USB 1.1, it can be used at USB 1.1. *2 Setup possible through Standard setup, WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup), WCN (Windows Connect Now) or Easy wireless connect. USB and LAN can be used at the same time.
<b>Print width</b>	8 inches/203.2 mm
<b>Printable area</b>	Top margin: 0.12 inch (3.0 mm) Bottom margin: 0.66 inch (16.7 mm) Left margin: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Letter/Legal: 0.26 inch (6.4 mm)</li> <li>• Other sizes: 0.14 inch (3.4 mm)</li> </ul> Right margin: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Letter/Legal: 0.25 inch (6.3 mm)</li> <li>• Other sizes: 0.14 inch (3.4 mm)</li> </ul>
<b>Operating environment</b>	<b>Temperature:</b> 41 to 95 °F (5 to 35 °C) <b>Humidity:</b> 10 to 90 % RH (no condensation) * The performance of the printer may be reduced under certain temperature and humidity conditions. Recommended conditions: <b>Temperature:</b> 59 to 86 °F (15 to 30 °C) <b>Humidity:</b> 10 to 80 % RH (no condensation) * For the temperature and humidity conditions of papers such as photo paper, refer to the paper's packaging or the supplied instructions.
<b>Storage environment</b>	<b>Temperature:</b> 32 to 104 °F (0 to 40 °C) <b>Humidity:</b> 5 to 95 % RH (no condensation)
<b>Power supply</b>	AC 100-240 V, 50/60 Hz
<b>Power consumption</b>	<b>Printing (Copy):</b> Approx. 10 W <b>Standby (minimum):</b> Approx. 1.6 W *1*2 <b>OFF:</b> Approx. 0.2 W *1

	*1 USB connection to PC *2 The wait time for standby cannot be changed.
<b>External dimensions</b>	Approx. 16.8 (W) x 12.1 (D) x 5.8 (H) inches Approx. 426 (W) x 306 (D) x 145 (H) mm * With the Paper Support and Paper Output Tray retracted.
<b>Weight</b>	Approx. 7.6 lb (Approx. 3.5 kg) * With the FINE Cartridges installed.
<b>Canon FINE Cartridge</b>	Total 1280 nozzles (BK 320 nozzles, C/M/Y each 320 nozzles)

## Copy Specifications

<b>Multiple copy</b>	max. 21 pages
----------------------	---------------

## Scan Specifications

<b>Scanner driver</b>	<b>Windows:</b> TWAIN 1.9 Specification, WIA <b>Mac OS:</b> ICA
<b>Maximum scanning size</b>	A4/Letter, 8.5" x 11.7"/216 x 297 mm
<b>Scanning resolution</b>	<b>Optical resolution (horizontal x vertical) max:</b> 600 x 1200 dpi *1 <b>Interpolated resolution max:</b> 19200 x 19200 dpi *2 *1 Optical Resolution represents the maximum sampling rate based on ISO 14473. *2 Increasing the scanning resolution will limit the maximum possible scanning area.
<b>Gradation (Input / Output)</b>	<b>Gray:</b> 16 bit/8 bit <b>Color:</b> 48 bit/24 bit (RGB each 16 bit/8 bit)

## Network Specifications

<b>Communication protocol</b>	TCP/IP
<b>Wireless LAN</b>	<b>Supported Standards:</b> IEEE802.11n / IEEE802.11g / IEEE802.11b <b>Frequency bandwidth:</b> 2.4 GHz <b>Channel:</b> 1-11 or 1-13 * Frequency bandwidth and available channels differ depending on country or region. <b>Communication distance:</b> Indoors 164 feet/50 m * Effective range varies depending on the installation environment and location. <b>Security:</b> WEP (64/128 bits)

	WPA-PSK (TKIP/AES) WPA2-PSK (TKIP/AES) <b>Setup:</b> WPS (Push button configuration/PIN code method) WCN (WCN-NET) Easy wireless connect <b>Other Features:</b> Administration password
--	---

## Minimum System Requirements

Conform to the operating system's requirements when higher than those given here.

### Windows

<b>Operating System</b>	Windows 10, Windows 8.1*, Windows 8 Windows 7 SP1 Windows Vista SP2 * Windows 8.1 includes Windows 8.1 Update.
<b>Hard Disk Space</b>	3.1 GB Note: For bundled software installation. The necessary amount of hard disk space may be changed without notice.
<b>Display</b>	XGA 1024 x 768

### Mac OS

<b>Operating System</b>	OS X v10.8.5 - OS X v10.11
<b>Hard Disk Space</b>	1.5 GB Note: For bundled software installation. The necessary amount of hard disk space may be changed without notice.
<b>Display</b>	XGA 1024 x 768

### Other Supported OS

Some functions may not be available with each OS. Refer to the Canon web site for details on operation with iOS, Android, Windows RT, and Windows 10 Mobile.

### Mobile Printing Capability

Google Cloud Print
PIXMA Cloud Link

- An internet connection is required to use Easy-WebPrint EX and all the Online Manual.
- Windows: Operation can only be guaranteed on a PC with pre-installed Windows Vista or later.

- Windows: A CD-ROM Drive or internet connection is required during software installation.
- Windows: Internet Explorer 8, 9, 10 or 11 is required to install Easy-WebPrint EX.
- Windows: Some functions may not be available with Windows Media Center.
- Windows: .NET Framework 4.5.2 or 4.6 must be installed to use the Windows software.
- Windows: The TWAIN driver (ScanGear) is based on the TWAIN 1.9 Specification and requires the Data Source Manager bundled with the operating system.
- Mac OS: For Mac OS, an internet connection is required during software installation.
- In an in-house network environment, the 5222 port must be open. Contact the network administrator for details.

Information in this guide is subject to change without notice.



## Information about Paper

- ▶ **Supported Media Types**
  - Paper Load Limit
- ▶ **Unsupported Media Types**
- ▶ **Handling Paper**
- ▶ **Print Area**

## Supported Media Types

For best results, choose paper designed for how you are printing. A variety of paper for documents as well as photos or illustrations is available from Canon. Use genuine Canon paper to print important photos, when possible.

### Media Types

#### Genuine Canon paper

##### ▶▶▶ Note

- For warnings on use of the non-printable side, see each product's usage information.
- For details on page sizes and media types, access the Canon website.
- Genuine Canon paper is not available in some countries or regions. Note that in the United States, Canon paper is not sold by model number. Instead, purchase paper by name.

#### Paper for printing documents:

- Canon Red Label Superior <WOP111>
- Canon Océ Office Colour Paper <SAT213>

#### Paper for printing photos:

- Glossy Photo Paper "Everyday Use" <GP-501>
- Photo Paper Glossy <GP-701>
- Photo Paper Plus Glossy II <PP-201>
- Photo Paper Plus Glossy II <PP-301>

#### Paper other than genuine Canon paper

- Plain Paper (including recycled paper)
- Envelopes

■ [Paper Load Limit](#)

■ [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver](#) (Windows)

■ [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver](#) (Mac OS)

##### ▶▶▶ Note

- When printing photos saved on a PictBridge (Wireless LAN) compliant device, you must specify the page size and media type.
  - Printing from Digital Camera

### Page Sizes

You can use the following page sizes.

##### ▶▶▶ Note

- Page sizes and media types the printer supports differ depending on the OS you are using.

**Standard sizes:**

- A4
- B5
- A5
- Letter
- Legal
- 4" x 6" (10 x 15 cm)
- 5" x 7" (13 x 18 cm)
- Square 5"x5" 127x127mm
- Envelope Com 10
- Envelope DL

**Special sizes**

Special page sizes must be within the following limits:

- Minimum size: 4.00 x 5.00 inches (101.6 x 127.0 mm)
- Maximum size: 8.50 x 26.61 inches (215.9 x 676.0 mm)

**Paper Weight**

You can use paper in the following weight range.

- 17 to 28 lb (64 to 105 g /m<sup>2</sup>) (plain paper other than genuine Canon paper)

# Paper Load Limit

## Genuine Canon Paper

### Paper for printing documents:

Media Name <Model No.>	Rear Tray	Paper Output Tray
Canon Red Label Superior <WOP111>	Approx. 60 sheets	Approx. 10 sheets
Canon Océ Office Colour Paper <SAT213>	Approx. 50 sheets	Approx. 10 sheets

### Paper for printing photos:

#### ▶▶▶ Note

- For best results in continuous printing, remove printed sheets from the paper output tray to avoid smearing or discoloration.

Media Name <Model No.>	Rear Tray
Glossy Photo Paper "Everyday Use" <GP-501> <sup>*1</sup>	4" x 6" (10 x 15 cm): 20 sheets
Photo Paper Glossy <GP-701> <sup>*1</sup>	4" x 6" (10 x 15 cm): 20 sheets
Photo Paper Plus Glossy II <PP-201> <sup>*1</sup>	5" x 7" (13 x 18 cm), Square 5" x 5" (127 x 127 mm): 10 sheets 4" x 6" (10 x 15 cm): 20 sheets
Photo Paper Plus Glossy II <PP-301> <sup>*1</sup>	5" x 7" (13 x 18 cm), Square 5" x 5" (127 x 127 mm): 10 sheets 4" x 6" (10 x 15 cm): 20 sheets

## Paper other than Genuine Canon Paper

Common Name	Rear Tray	Paper Output Tray
Plain Paper (including recycled paper)	Approx. 60 sheets (10 sheets: Legal)	Approx. 10 sheets
Envelopes	5 envelopes	<sup>*2</sup>

\*1 When loading paper in stacks, the print side may become marked as it is fed or paper may not feed properly. In this case, load one sheet at a time.

\*2 We recommend that you remove the previously printed envelope from the paper output tray before continuously printing to avoid blurs and discoloration.

## Unsupported Media Types

Do not use the following types of paper. Using such paper will cause not only unsatisfactory results, but also the printer to jam or malfunction.

- Folded, curled, or wrinkled paper
- Damp paper
- Paper that is too thin (weighing less than 17 lb (64 g /m<sup>2</sup>))
- Paper that is too thick (plain paper weighing more than 28 lb (105 g /m<sup>2</sup>), except for Canon genuine paper)
- Paper thinner than a postcard, including plain paper or notepad paper cut to a small size (when printing on paper smaller than A5)
- Picture postcards
- Postcards
- Envelopes with a double flap
- Envelopes with an embossed or treated surface
- Envelopes whose gummed flaps are already moistened and adhesive
- Any type of paper with holes
- Paper that is not rectangular
- Paper bound with staples or glue
- Paper with an adhesive surface on the back such as label seal
- Paper decorated with glitter, etc.

## Handling Paper

- Be careful not to rub or scratch the surfaces of any types of paper when handling.
- Hold the paper as closely as possible to its edges and try not to touch the printing surface. The print quality may be degraded if the printing surface is smudged with sweat or oil that comes from your hands.
- Do not touch the printed surface until the ink is dried. Even when the ink is dried, be careful not to touch the printed surface as much as possible when handling. Due to the nature of the pigment ink, the ink on the printed surface may be removed when being rubbed or scratched.
- Take out only the necessary number of paper from the package, just before printing.
- To avoid curling, when you do not print, put unused paper back into the package and keep it on a level surface. And also, store it avoiding heat, humidity, and direct sunlight.

## Printing from Computer

- ▶ [Printing from Application Software \(Windows Printer Driver\)](#)
- ▶ [Printing from Application Software \(Mac OS Printer Driver\)](#)
- ▶ [Printing Using Canon Application Software](#)
- ▶ [Printing Using a Web Service](#)
- ▶ [Printing from a Device Equipped with Windows 10 Mobile](#)

## Printing from Application Software (Windows Printer Driver)

- ▶ **Basic Printing Setup** 📌 **Basic**
- ▶ **Various Printing Methods**
- ▶ **Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data**
- ▶ **Overview of the Printer Driver**
- ▶ **Printer Driver Description**
- ▶ **Updating the MP Drivers**

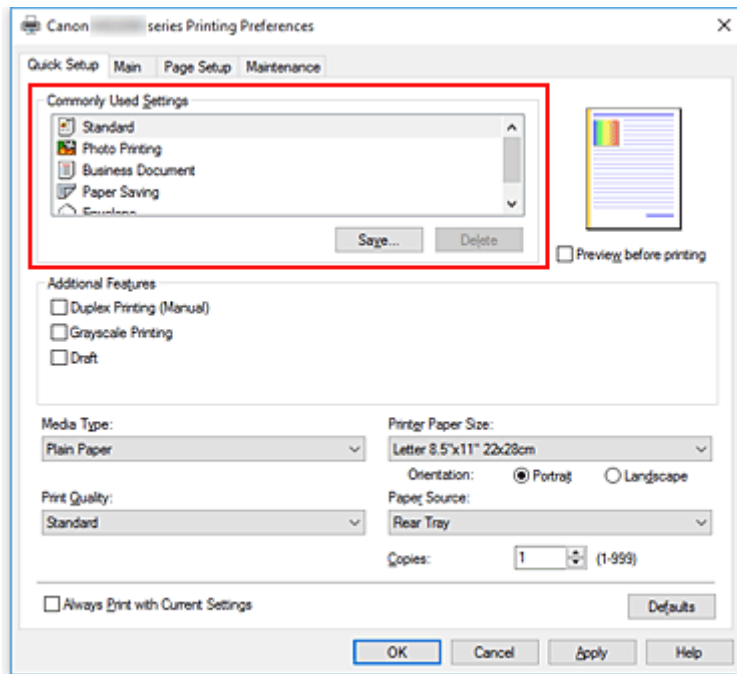


# Basic Printing Setup

This section describes settings on the [Quick Setup tab](#) used for basic printing.

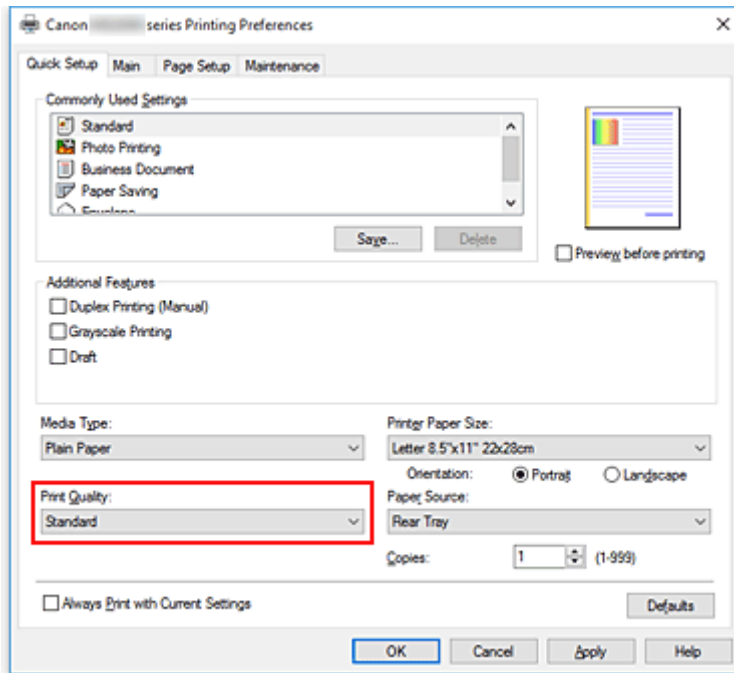
1. [Check that printer power is on](#)
2. [Load paper](#) in printer
3. Open [printer driver's setup screen](#)
4. Select frequently used settings

On the **Quick Setup** tab, use **Commonly Used Settings** to select from predefined print settings. When you select a print setting, the settings for **Additional Features**, **Media Type**, and **Printer Paper Size** automatically switch to the predefined values.



5. Select print quality

For **Print Quality**, select from **High**, **Standard**, or **Draft**.

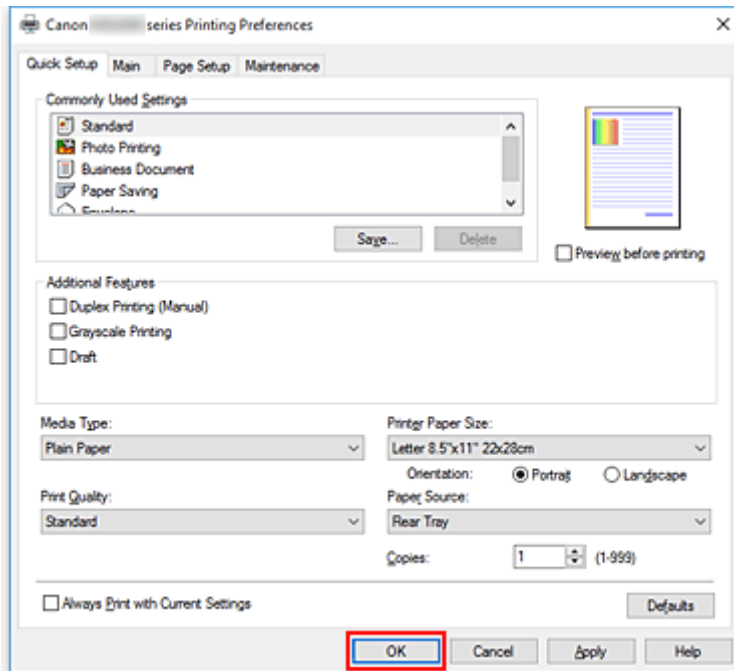


### »» Important

- The print quality selections will differ depending on which print setting you select.

#### 6. Click **OK**

The printer will now print using these settings.



### »» Important

- When you select **Always Print with Current Settings**, the settings on the **Quick Setup**, **Main**, and **Page Setup** tabs are saved, and those settings are used in subsequent printings.
- To [register the current settings](#) as a new preset, click **Save...** under **Commonly Used Settings**.

## Paper Settings on the Printer Driver

When you use this printer, selecting a media type that matches the print purpose will help you achieve the best print results.

You can use the following media types on this printer.

### Canon genuine papers (Document Printing)

Media name <Model No.>	Media Type in the printer driver
Canon Red Label Superior <WOP111>	<b>Plain Paper</b>
Canon Océ Office Colour Paper <SAT213>	<b>Plain Paper</b>

### Canon genuine papers (Photo Printing)

Media name <Model No.>	Media Type in the printer driver
Photo Paper Plus Glossy II <PP-201/PP-301>	<b>Photo Paper Plus Glossy II</b>
Glossy Photo Paper "Everyday Use" <GP-501>	<b>Glossy Photo Paper</b>
Photo Paper Glossy <GP-701>	<b>Glossy Photo Paper</b>

### Commercially available papers

Media name	Media Type in the printer driver
Plain Paper (including recycled paper)	<b>Plain Paper</b>
Envelopes	<b>Envelope</b>

## **Various Printing Methods**

- ▶ **Setting a Page Size and Orientation**
- ▶ **Setting the Number of Copies and Printing Order**
- ▶ **Scaled Printing**
- ▶ **Page Layout Printing**
- ▶ **Tiling/Poster Printing**
- ▶ **Duplex Printing**
- ▶ **Setting Up Envelope Printing**

## Setting a Page Size and Orientation

The paper size and orientation are essentially determined by the application software. When the page size and orientation set for **Page Size** and **Orientation** on the **Page Setup** tab are same as those set with the application software, you do not need to select them on the **Page Setup** tab.

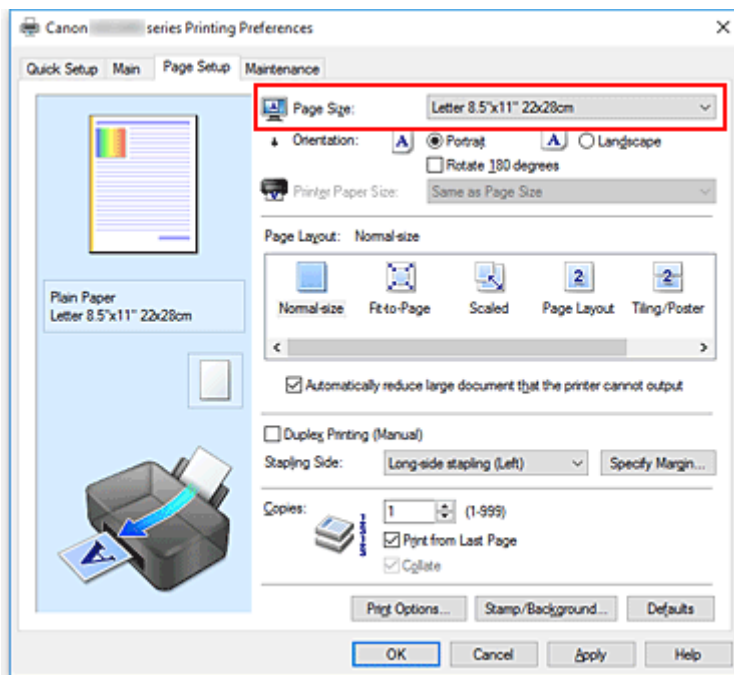
When you are not able to specify them with the application software, the procedure for selecting a page size and orientation is as follows:

You can also set page size and orientation on the **Quick Setup** tab.

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

2. Select the paper size

Select a page size from the **Page Size** list on the **Page Setup** tab.



3. Set **Orientation**

Select **Portrait** or **Landscape** for **Orientation**. Check **Rotate 180 degrees** check box when you want to perform printing with the original being rotated 180 degrees.

4. Click **OK**

When you execute print, the document will be printed with the selected page size and the orientation.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- If **Normal-size** is selected for **Page Layout**, then **Automatically reduce large document that the printer cannot output** is displayed.

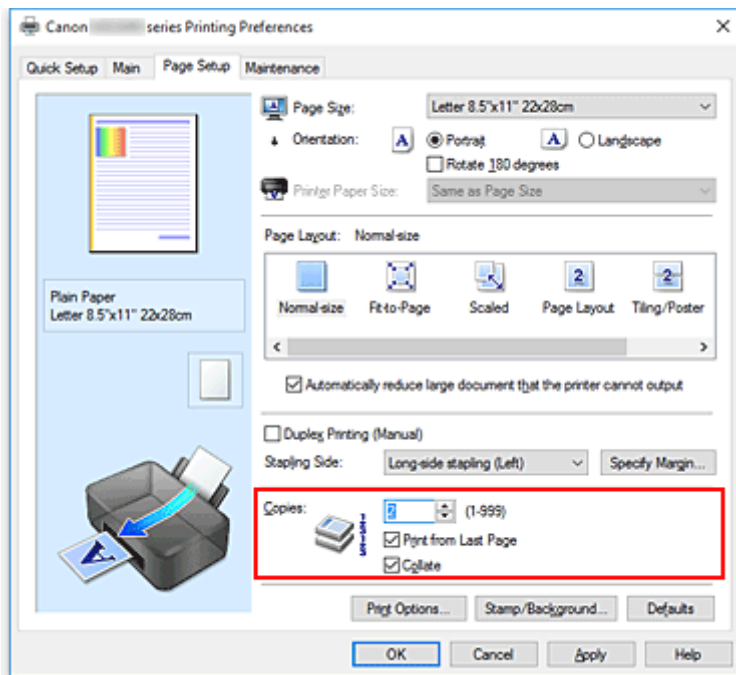
Normally, you can leave the check box checked. During printing, if you do not want to reduce large documents that cannot be printed on the printer, uncheck the check box.

## Setting the Number of Copies and Printing Order

The procedure for specifying the number of copies and printing order is as follows:  
You can also set the number of copies on the **Quick Setup** tab.

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)
2. Specify the number of copies to be printed

For **Copies** on the **Page Setup** tab, specify the number of copies to be printed.

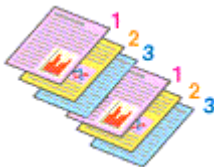


3. Specify the print order

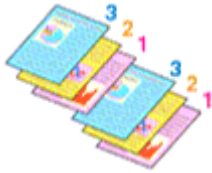
Check the **Print from Last Page** check box when you want to print from the last page in order, and uncheck the check box when you want to print from the first page.

Check the **Collate** check box when you are printing multiple copies of a document and want to print out all pages in each copy together. Uncheck this check box when you want to print all pages with the same page number together.

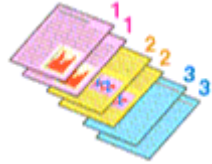
- **Print from Last Page:**  / **Collate:**



- **Print from Last Page:**  / **Collate:**



- **Print from Last Page:**  / **Collate:**



- **Print from Last Page:**  / **Collate:**



#### 4. Click **OK**

When you execute print, the specified number of copies will be printed with the specified printing order.

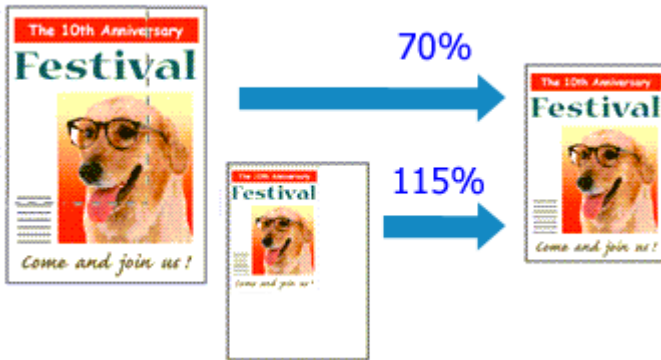
### »» Important

- When the application software that you used to create the document has the same function, specify the settings on the printer driver. However, if the print results are not acceptable, specify the function settings on the application software. When you specify the number of copies and the printing order with both the application software and this printer driver, the number of copies may be multiplied numbers of the two settings or the specified printing order may not be enabled.
- **Print from Last Page** appears grayed out and is unavailable when **Tiling/Poster** is selected for **Page Layout**.
- When **Booklet** is selected for **Page Layout**, **Print from Last Page** and **Collate** appear grayed out and cannot be set.
- When **Duplex Printing (Manual)** is selected, **Print from Last Page** appears grayed out and cannot be set.

### »» Note

- By setting both **Print from Last Page** and **Collate**, you can perform printing so that papers are collated one by one starting from the last page.  
These settings can be used in combination with **Normal-size**, **Fit-to-Page**, **Scaled**, and **Page Layout**.

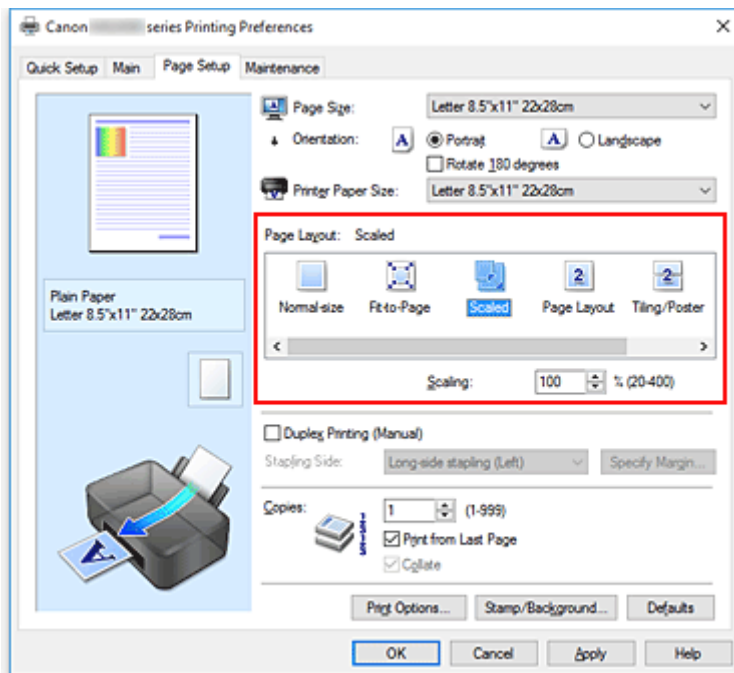
# Scaled Printing



The procedure for printing a document with pages enlarged or reduced is as follows:

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)
2. Set scaled printing

Select **Scaled** from the **Page Layout** list on the **Page Setup** tab.



3. Select the paper size of the document

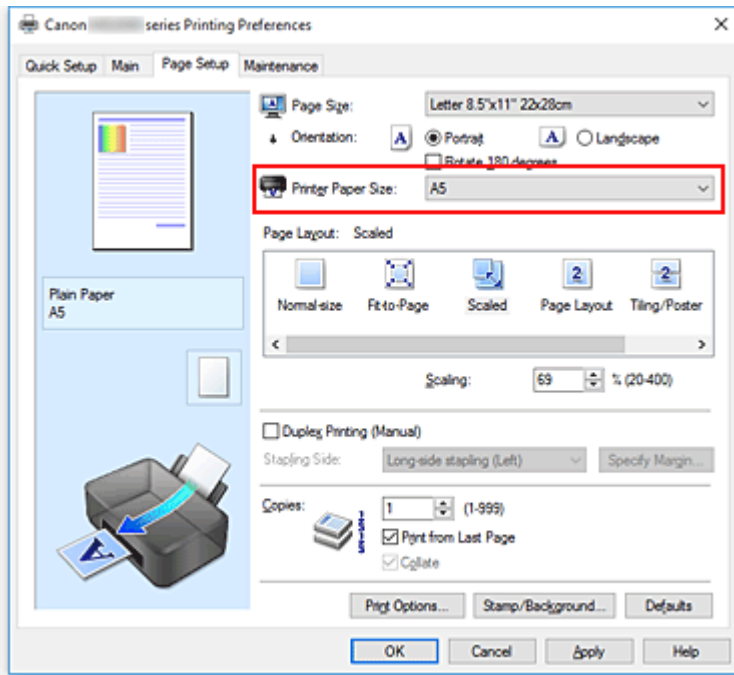
Using **Page Size**, select the page size that is set with your application software.

4. Set the scaling rate by using one of the following methods:

- Select a **Printer Paper Size**

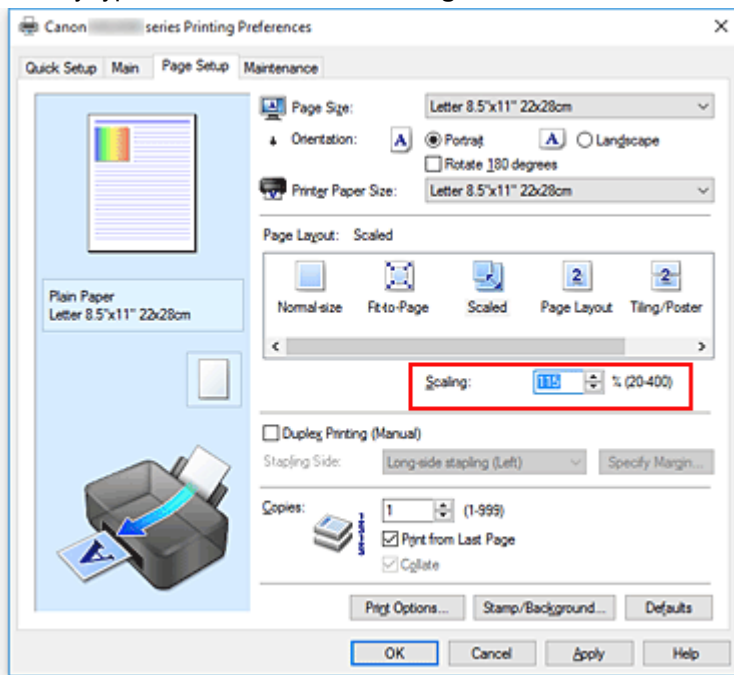
When the printer paper size is smaller than the **Page Size**, the page image will be reduced. When the printer paper size is larger than the **Page Size**, the page image will be enlarged.





- Specify a scaling factor

Directly type in a value into the **Scaling** box.



The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.

## 5. Click **OK**

When you execute print, the document will be printed with the specified scale.

### ►►► Important

- When the application software which you used to create the original has the scaled printing function, configure the settings on your application software. You do not need to configure the same setting in the printer driver.

»» Note

- Selecting **Scaled** changes the printable area of the document.

# Page Layout Printing

The page layout printing function allows you to print more than one page image on a single sheet of paper.



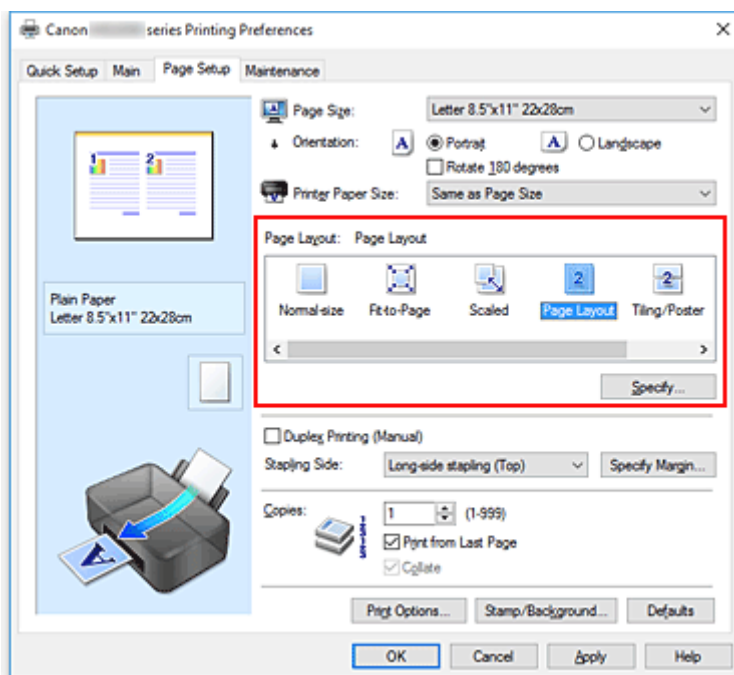
The procedure for performing page layout printing is as follows:

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

2. Set page layout printing

Select **Page Layout** from the **Page Layout** list on the **Page Setup** tab.

The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.

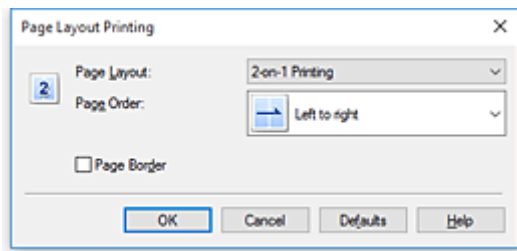


3. Select the print paper size

Select the size of the paper loaded in the printer from the **Printer Paper Size** list.

4. Set the number of pages to be printed on one sheet and the page order

If necessary, click **Specify...**, specify the following settings in the **Page Layout Printing** dialog box, and click **OK**.



### **Page Layout**

To change the number of pages to be printed on a single sheet of paper, select the number of pages from the list.

### **Page Order**

To change the page arrangement order, select a placement method from the list.

### **Page Border**

To print a page border around each document page, check this check box.

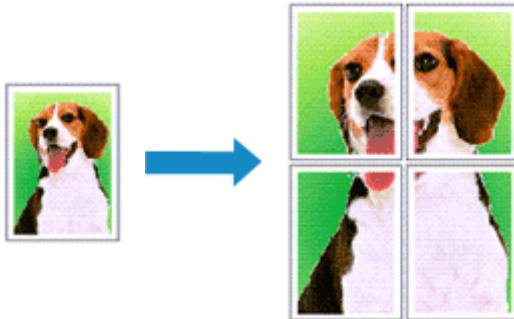
## 5. Complete the setup

Click **OK** on the **Page Setup** tab.

When you execute print, the specified number of pages will be arranged on each sheet of paper in the specified order.

## Tiling/Poster Printing

The tiling/poster printing function allows you to enlarge image data, divide it into several pages, and print these pages on separate sheets of paper. You can also paste the pages together to create a large print like a poster.



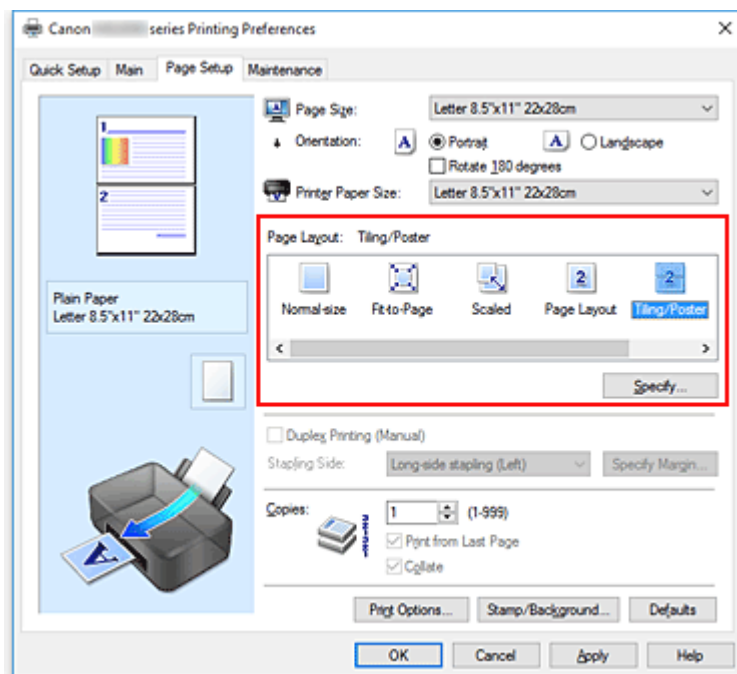
The procedure for performing tiling/poster printing is as follows:

### Setting Tiling/Poster Printing

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)
2. Set tiling/poster printing

Select **Tiling/Poster** from the **Page Layout** list on the **Page Setup** tab.

The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.

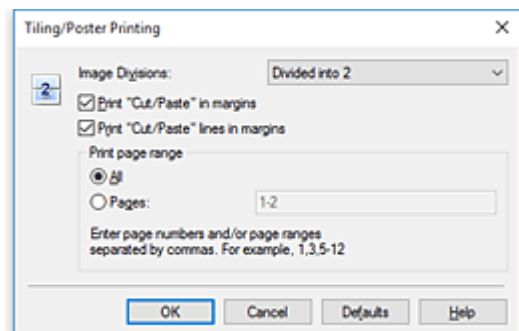


3. Select the print paper size

Select the size of the paper loaded in the printer from the **Printer Paper Size** list.

#### 4. Set the number of image divisions and the pages to be printed

If necessary, click **Specify...**, specify the following settings in the **Tiling/Poster Printing** dialog box, and then click **OK**.



##### **Image Divisions**

Select the number of divisions (vertical x horizontal).

As the number of divisions increases, the number of sheets used for printing increases. If you are pasting pages together to create a poster, increasing the number of divisions allows you to create a larger poster.

##### **Print "Cut/Paste" in margins**

To leave out words "Cut" and "Paste", uncheck this check box.

##### **»»» Note**

- This feature may be unavailable when certain printer drivers or operating environments are used.

##### **Print "Cut/Paste" lines in margins**

To leave out cut lines, uncheck this check box.

##### **Print page range**

Specifies the printing range. Select **All** under normal circumstances.

To reprint only a specific page, select **Pages** and enter the page number you want to print. To specify multiple pages, enter the page numbers by separating them with commas or by entering a hyphen between the page numbers.

##### **»»» Note**

- You can also specify the print range by clicking the pages in the settings preview.

#### 5. Complete the setup

Click **OK** on the **Page Setup** tab.

When you execute print, the document will be divided into several pages during printing.

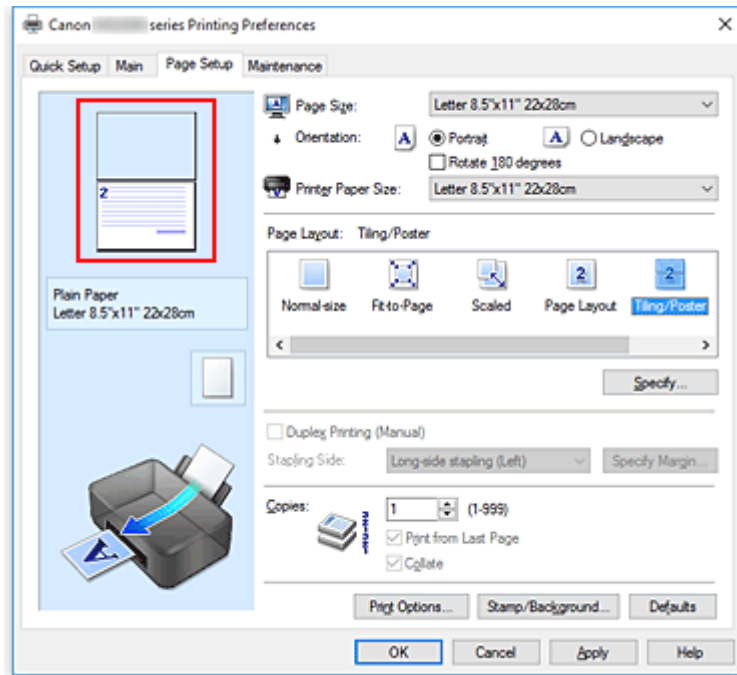
## **Printing Only Specific Pages**

If ink becomes faint or runs out during printing, you can reprint only the specific pages by following the procedure below:

#### 1. Set the print range

In the settings preview on the left of the **Page Setup** tab, click the pages that do not need to be printed.

The pages that were clicked are deleted, and only the pages to be printed are displayed.



### ➤➤➤ Note

- Click the deleted pages to display them again.
- Right-click the settings preview to select **Print all pages** or **Delete all pages**.

## 2. Complete the setup

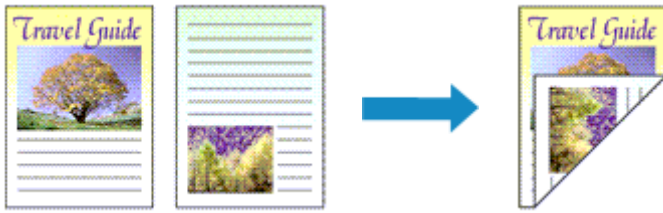
After completing the page selection, click **OK**.

When you execute print, only specified pages will be printed.

### ➤➤➤ Important

- Since tiling/poster printing enlarges the document when printing it, the print results may become coarse.

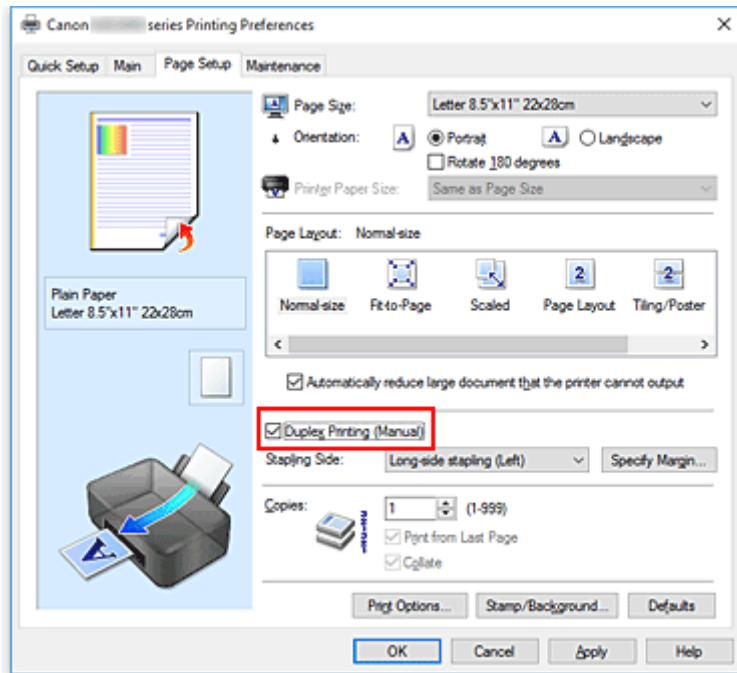
# Duplex Printing



The procedure for printing data on both sides of one sheet of paper is as follows:  
You can also set duplex printing in **Additional Features** on the **Quick Setup** tab.

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)
2. Set duplex printing

Check the **Duplex Printing (Manual)** check box on the **Page Setup** tab.



3. Select the layout

Select **Normal-size**, **Fit-to-Page**, **Scaled**, or **Page Layout** from the **Page Layout** list.

4. Specify the side to be stapled

The best **Stapling Side** is selected automatically from the **Orientation** and **Page Layout** settings. To change the setting, select another stapling side from the list.

5. Set the margin width

If necessary, click **Specify Margin...** and set the margin width, and then click **OK**.



## 6. Complete the setup

Click **OK** on the **Page Setup** tab.

When you execute print, the document is first printed on one side of a sheet of paper. After one side is printed, reload the paper correctly according to the message.

Then click **Start Printing** to print the opposite side.

### ▶▶▶ Important

- When a media type other than **Plain Paper** is selected from **Media Type** on the **Main** tab, **Duplex Printing (Manual)** appears grayed out and is unavailable.
- When **Tiling/Poster** or **Booklet** is selected from the **Page Layout** list, **Duplex Printing (Manual)** and **Stapling Side** appear grayed out and are unavailable.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- If the back side of the paper becomes smudged during duplex printing, perform **Bottom Plate Cleaning** in the **Maintenance** tab.

## Related Topics

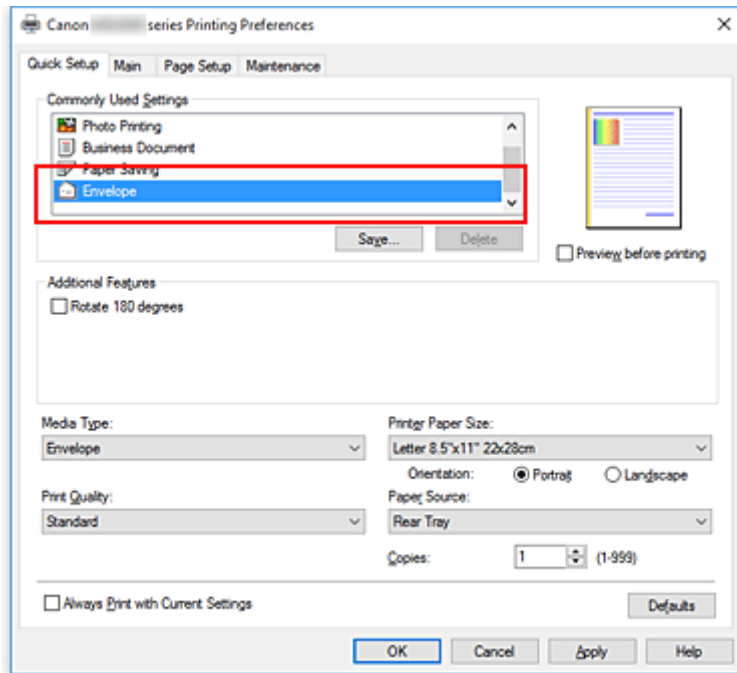
- [Cleaning Inside the Printer](#)
- [Changing the Printer Operation Mode](#)

## Setting Up Envelope Printing

The procedure for performing envelope printing is as follows:

1. [Load envelope](#) on the printer
2. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)
3. Select the media type

Select **Envelope** from **Commonly Used Settings** on the **Quick Setup** tab.

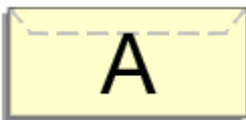


4. Select the paper size

When the **Envelope Size Setting** dialog box is displayed, select **Envelope Com 10** or **Envelope DL**, and then click **OK**.

5. Set the orientation

To print the addressee horizontally, select **Landscape** for **Orientation**.



### ▶▶▶ Note

- If **Envelope Com 10**, or **Envelope DL** is selected for **Printer Paper Size**, the printer rotates the paper 90 degrees to the left to print, regardless of the **Rotate 90 degrees left when orientation is [Landscape]** setting for **Custom Settings** on the **Maintenance** tab.

6. Select the print quality

Select **High** or **Standard** that matches your purpose for **Print Quality**.

7. Click **OK**

When you execute print, the information is printed on the envelope.

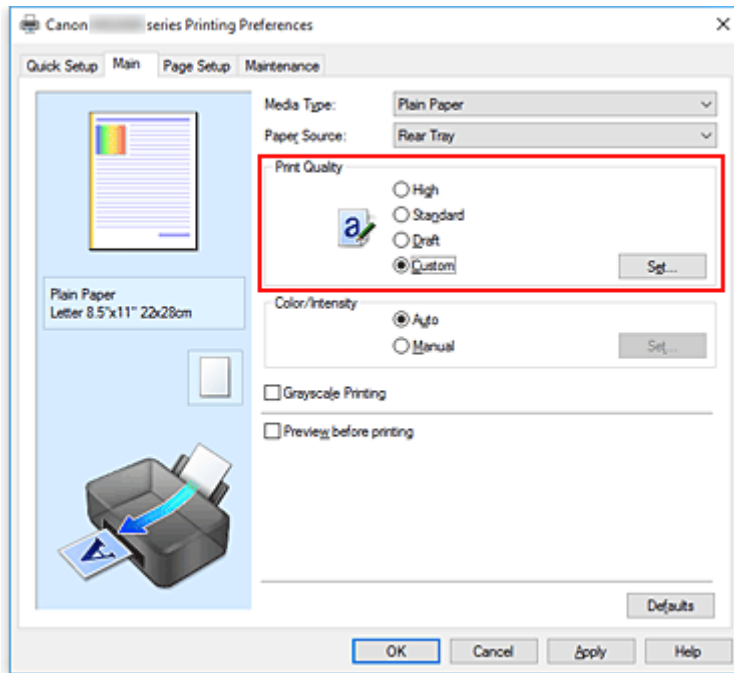
## Setting the Print Quality Level (Custom)

The print quality level can be set in the **Custom**.

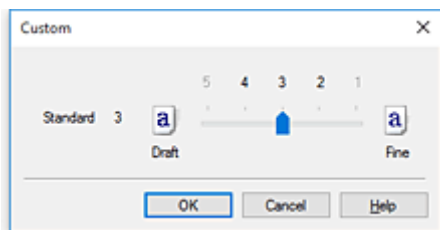
The procedure for setting the print quality level is as follows:

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)
2. Select the print quality

On the **Main** tab, select **Custom** for **Print Quality**, and click **Set...**



The **Custom** dialog box opens.



3. Setting the print quality level

Drag the slider bar to select the print quality level and click **OK**.

4. Complete the setup

Click **OK** on the **Main** tab.

When you execute print, the image data is printed with the selected print quality level.

### ►►► Important

- Certain print quality levels cannot be selected depending on the settings of **Media Type**.

## Related Topics

- [Specifying Color Correction](#)
- [Adjusting Color Balance](#)
- [Adjusting Brightness](#)
- [Adjusting Intensity](#)
- [Adjusting Contrast](#)

## **Overview of the Printer Driver**

- ▶ **Canon IJ Printer Driver**
- ▶ **Opening Printer Driver's Setup Screen**
- ▶ **Canon IJ Status Monitor**
- ▶ **Checking the Ink Status from Your Computer**
- ▶ **Canon IJ Preview**
- ▶ **Deleting the Undesired Print Job**
- ▶ **Instructions for Use (Printer Driver)**

# Canon IJ Printer Driver

The Canon IJ printer driver (simply called printer driver below) is software that you install onto your computer so that it can communicate with the printer.

The printer driver converts the print data created by your application software into data that your printer can understand, and sends the converted data to the printer.

Because different printers support different data formats, you need a printer driver that supports your printer.

## Printer Driver Types

If your computer is running Windows Vista SP1 or a later version, you can install the XPS printer driver in addition to the normal printer driver.

The XPS printer driver is suited to printing from application software that supports XPS printing.

### »» Important

- Note that if you want to use the XPS printer driver, the normal printer driver must also be installed.

## Installing the Printer Driver

- To install the normal printer driver, install the driver from **Start Setup Again** on the setup CD-ROM that came with your printer.
- To install the XPS printer driver, load the setup CD-ROM that comes with the printer, and then select **XPS Driver** from **Add Software**.

## Specifying the Printer Driver

To specify the printer driver, open the **Print** dialog box of the application software you are using, and select "Canon XXX" (where "XXX" is your model name) to specify the regular printer driver or select "Canon XXX XPS" (where "XXX" is your model name) to specify the XPS printer driver.

## Displaying the Manual from the Printer Driver

To display the description of a setup tab from the printer driver's setup screen, click **Help** on that tab.

## Related Topic

- [Opening Printer Driver's Setup Screen](#)

## Opening Printer Driver's Setup Screen

You can display the printer driver's setup screen from your application software or by clicking the printer icon.

### Displaying the Printer Driver's Setup Screen from Your Application Software

Perform this procedure to set up the print settings during printing.

1. Select print command from application software

The **Print** command can generally be found in the **File** menu.

2. Select your printer model, and click **Preferences** (or **Properties**)

The printer driver's setup screen appears.

#### **Note**

- Depending on the application software you are using, the command and menu names, and the number of steps may vary. For details, refer to the operating instructions of your application software.

### Displaying the Printer Driver's Setup Screen by Clicking the Printer Icon

From the setup screen you can perform printer maintenance operations such as print head cleaning, or set print settings to be shared by all application software.

1. To open the setup screen:

- If you are using Windows 10, Windows 8.1, or Windows 8, select **Control Panel** -> **Hardware and Sound** -> **Devices and Printers**.
- If you are using Windows 7, from the **Start** menu, select **Devices and Printers**.
- If you are using Windows Vista, select the **Control Panel** -> **Hardware and Sound** -> **Printers**.

2. Right-click the icon of your model. When the menu appears, select **Printing preferences**

The printer driver's setup screen appears.

#### **Important**

- Opening the printer driver setup window through **Printer properties** (Windows 10, Windows 8.1, Windows 8, Windows 7) or **Properties** (Windows Vista) displays such tabs regarding the Windows functions as the **Ports** (or **Advanced**) tab. Those tabs do not appear when opening through **Printing preferences** or application software. For tabs regarding Windows functions, refer to the user's manual for the Windows.

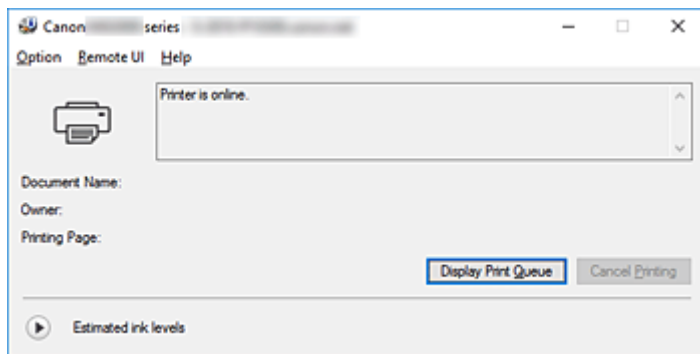


## Checking the Ink Status from Your Computer


You can check the remaining ink level and the FINE cartridge types for your model.

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)
2. Launching the Canon IJ Status Monitor

On the **Maintenance** tab, click **View Printer Status**.




3. Display **Estimated ink levels**

For **Estimated ink levels**, click  (the disclosure triangle) to display an image representation of the ink status.

### **Note**

- The information displayed on the Canon IJ Status Monitor may differ depending on the country or region where you are using your printer.
- When you receive a notice about the remaining ink level, a mark appears above the ink icon.

For example: 

The ink is running low. Prepare a new ink cartridge.

## Instructions for Use (Printer Driver)

This printer driver is subject to the following restrictions. Keep the following points in mind when using the printer driver.

### Restrictions on the Printer Driver

- With some applications, the **Copies** setting in the **Page Setup** tab of the printer driver may not be enabled.

In this case, use the copies setting in the **Print** dialog box of the application software.

- If the selected **Language** in the **About** dialog box of the **Maintenance** tab does not match the operating system interface language, the printer driver setup window may not be displayed properly.
- Do not change the **Advanced** tab items of the printer properties. If you change any of the items, you will not be able to use the following functions correctly.

Also, if **Print to file** is selected in the **Print** dialog box of the application software and with applications that prohibit EMF spooling, such as Adobe Photoshop LE and MS Photo Editor, the following functions will not operate.

- **Preview before printing** on the **Main** tab
  - **Prevention of Print Data Loss** in the **Print Options** dialog box on the **Page Setup** tab
  - **Page Layout, Tiling/Poster, Booklet, Duplex Printing (Manual), Specify Margin..., Print from Last Page, Collate, and Stamp/Background... (Stamp...)** on the **Page Setup** tab
  - **Print a pattern for color adjustment** on the **Color Adjustment** tab in the **Manual Color Adjustment** dialog box
- Since the resolution in the preview display differs from the printing resolution, text and lines in the preview display may appear different from the actual print result.
  - With some applications, the printing is divided into multiple print jobs.  
To cancel printing, delete all divided print jobs.
  - If image data is not printed correctly, display the **Print Options** dialog box from the **Page Setup** tab and change the setting of **Disable ICM required from the application software**. This may solve the problem.

#### Note

- **Disable ICM required from the application software** cannot be used when the XPS printer driver is used.

### Points to Note About Applications with Restrictions

- There are following restrictions in Microsoft Word (Microsoft Corporation).
  - When Microsoft Word has the same printing functions as the printer driver, use Word to specify them.
  - When **Fit-to-Page, Scaled, or Page Layout** is used for **Page Layout** on the **Page Setup** tab of the printer driver, the document may not print normally in certain versions of Word.
  - When **Page Size** in Word is set to "XXX Enlarge/Reduce", the document may not print normally in certain versions of Word.

If this happens, follow the procedure below.

1. Open Word's **Print** dialog box.
2. Open the [printer driver setup window](#), and on the **Page Setup** tab, set **Page Size** to the same paper size that you specified in Word.

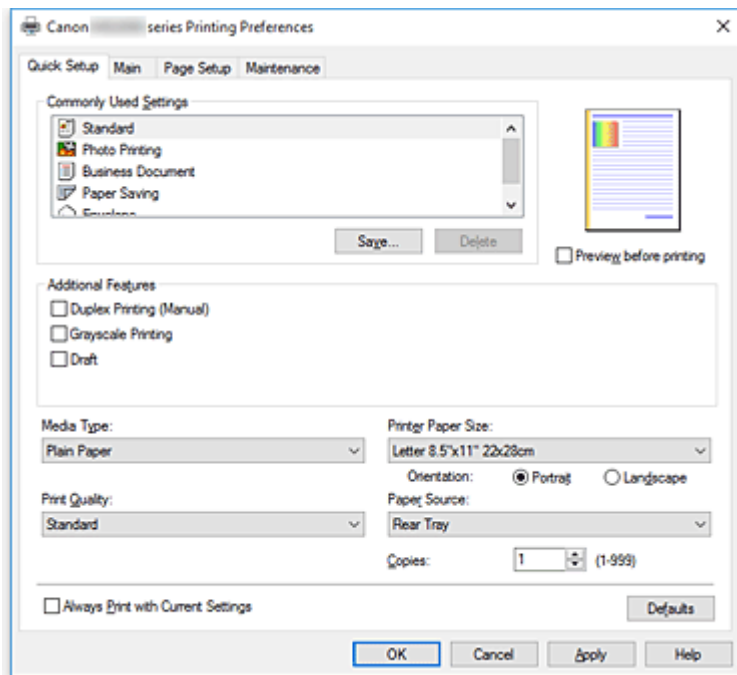
3. Set the **Page Layout** that you want, and then click **OK** to close the window.
  4. Without starting printing, close the **Print** dialog box.
  5. Open Word's **Print** dialog box again.
  6. Open the printer driver setup window and click **OK**.
  7. Start printing.
- If bitmap printing is enabled in Adobe Illustrator (Adobe Systems Incorporated), printing may take time or some data may not be printed. Print after unchecking the **Bitmap Printing** check box in the **Print** dialog box.

## **Printer Driver Description**

- ▶ **Quick Setup tab Description**
- ▶ **Main tab Description**
- ▶ **Page Setup tab Description**
- ▶ **Maintenance tab Description**
- ▶ **Canon IJ Preview Description**
- ▶ **Canon IJ Status Monitor Screen**

## Quick Setup tab Description

The **Quick Setup** tab is for registering commonly used print settings. When you select a registered setting, the printer automatically switches to the preset items.



### Commonly Used Settings

The names and icons of frequently used printing profiles are registered. When you select a printing profile according to the purpose of the document, settings that match the purpose are applied.

In addition, functions that are thought to be useful for the selected printing profile are displayed in **Additional Features**.

You can also change a printing profile and register it under a new name. You can delete the registered printing profile.

You can rearrange the profiles either by dragging the individual profiles or by holding down the Ctrl key and pressing the up or down arrow keys.

#### Standard

These are the factory settings.

If **Page Size**, **Orientation**, and **Copies** were set from the application software, those settings have priority.

#### Photo Printing

If you select this setting when printing a photo, the photo paper and photo size generally used are set.

If **Orientation** and **Copies** were set from the application software, those settings have priority.

#### Business Document

Select this setting when printing a general document.

If **Page Size**, **Orientation**, and **Copies** were set from the application software, those settings have priority.

#### Paper Saving

Select this setting to save paper when printing a general document. The **2-on-1 Printing** and **Duplex Printing (Manual)** check boxes are checked automatically.

If **Page Size**, **Orientation**, and **Copies** were set from the application software, those settings have priority.

### Envelope

If you select this setting for printing an envelope, **Media Type** is set automatically to **Envelope**. In the **Envelope Size Setting** dialog box, select the size of the envelope to be used.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- The combination of the **Additional Features** that was displayed for the printing profile that had been selected when the added printing profile was saved is also displayed when that added printing profile is selected.

### Save...

Displays the [Save Commonly Used Settings dialog box](#).

Click this button when you want to save the information that you set on the **Quick Setup**, **Main**, and **Page Setup** tabs to **Commonly Used Settings**.

### Delete

Deletes a registered printing profile.

Select the name of the setting to be deleted from **Commonly Used Settings**, and click **Delete**. When a confirmation message is displayed, click **OK** to delete the specified printing profile.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- Printing profiles that are registered in the initial settings cannot be deleted.

### Settings Preview

The paper illustration shows how the original will be laid out on a sheet of paper.

You can check an overall image of the layout.

### Preview before printing

Shows what the print result will look like before you actually print the data.

Check this check box to display a preview before printing.

Uncheck this check box if you do not want to display a preview.

### ▶▶▶ Important

- To use the Canon IJ XPS Preview, you must have Microsoft .NET Framework 4.5.2 or later installed on your computer.

### Additional Features

Displays the frequently used, convenient functions for the printing profile that you selected for **Commonly Used Settings** on the **Quick Setup** tab.

When you move the mouse pointer near a function that can be changed, a description of that function is displayed.

To enable a function, check the corresponding check box.

For some functions, you can set detailed settings from the **Main** and **Page Setup** tabs.

### ▶▶▶ Important

- Depending on the printing profiles, certain function may be grayed out and you will not be able to change them.

## 2-on-1 Printing

Prints two pages of the document, side by side, on one sheet of paper.

To change the page sequence, click the **Page Setup** tab, select **Page Layout** for **Page Layout**, and click **Specify...** Then in the [Page Layout Printing dialog box](#) that appears, specify the **Page Order**.

## 4-on-1 Printing

Prints four pages of the document, side by side, on one sheet of paper.

To change the page sequence, click the **Page Setup** tab, select **Page Layout** for **Page Layout**, and click **Specify...** Then in the [Page Layout Printing dialog box](#) that appears, specify the **Page Order**.

## Duplex Printing (Manual)

Select whether to print the document to both sides of the paper manually or to one side of the paper.

To change the staple side or the margins, set the new values from the **Page Setup** tab.

## Grayscale Printing

This function converts the data to monochrome data when printing your document.

## Draft

This setting is appropriate for test printing.

## Rotate 180 degrees

Prints the document by rotating it 180 degrees against the paper feed direction.

The width of print area and the amount of extension that are configured in other application software will be reversed vertically and horizontally.

## Color/Intensity Manual Adjustment

Select when you set the **Color Correction** method and individual settings such as **Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, Brightness, Intensity, and Contrast**, etc.

## Media Type

Selects a type of printing paper.

Select a media type that matches the paper that is loaded in the printer. This ensures that printing is carried out properly for the specified paper.

## Printer Paper Size

Selects the size of paper actually loaded into the printer.

Normally, the paper size is set automatically according to the output paper size setting, and the document is printed with no scaling.

When you set **2-on-1 Printing** or **4-on-1 Printing** in **Additional Features**, you can manually set the paper size with **Page Size** on the **Page Setup** tab.

If you select a paper size that is smaller than the **Page Size**, the document size will be reduced. If you select a paper size that is larger, the document size will be enlarged.

Also if you select **Custom...**, the [Custom Paper Size dialog box](#) opens and allows you to specify any vertical and horizontal dimensions for the paper size.

## Orientation

Selects the printing orientation.

If the application used to create your document has a similar function, select the same orientation that you selected in that application.

## Portrait

Prints the document so that its top and bottom positions are unchanged relative to the paper feed direction. This is the default setting.

## Landscape

Prints the document by rotating it 90 degrees relative to the paper feed direction.

You can change the rotation direction by going to the **Maintenance** tab, opening the **Custom Settings** dialog box, and then using **Rotate 90 degrees left when orientation is [Landscape]** check box.

To rotate the document 90 degrees to the left when printing, select the **Rotate 90 degrees left when orientation is [Landscape]** check box.

## Print Quality

Selects your desired printing quality.

Select one of the following to set the print quality level that is appropriate for the purpose.

To set the print quality level individually, click the **Main** tab, and for **Print Quality**, select **Custom**. The **Set...** becomes enabled. Click **Set...** to open the [Custom dialog box](#), and then specify the desired settings.

### High

Gives priority to print quality over printing speed.

### Standard

Prints with average speed and quality.

### Draft

This setting is appropriate for test printing.

## Paper Source

Shows the source from which paper is supplied.

### Rear Tray

Paper is always supplied from the rear tray.

## Copies

Specifies the number of copies you want to print. You can specify a value from 1 to 999.

### ►►► Important

- When the application software that you used to create the document has the same function, specify the settings on the printer driver. However, if the print results are not acceptable, specify the function settings on the application software.

## Always Print with Current Settings

Prints documents with the current settings starting from the next print execution.

When you select this function and then close the [printer driver setup window](#), the information that you set on the **Quick Setup**, **Main**, and **Page Setup** tabs are saved and printing with the same settings is possible starting from the next print execution.

### ►►► Important

- If you log on with a different user name, the settings that were set when this function was enabled are not reflected in the print settings.
- If a setting was specified on the application software, it has priority.



## Defaults

Restores all the settings you have changed to their default values.

Click this button to return all settings on the **Quick Setup**, **Main**, and **Page Setup** tabs to their default values (factory settings).

## Save Commonly Used Settings dialog box

This dialog box allows you to save the information that you set on the **Quick Setup**, **Main**, and **Page Setup** tabs and add the information to the **Commonly Used Settings** list on the **Quick Setup** tab.

### Name

Enter the name for the printing profile you wish to save.

Up to 255 characters can be entered.

The name appears, with its associated icon, in the **Commonly Used Settings** list on the **Quick Setup** tab.

### Options...

Opens the [Save Commonly Used Settings dialog box](#).

Changes the details of printing profile to be saved.

## Save Commonly Used Settings dialog box

Select the icons of the printing profiles to be registered to **Commonly Used Settings**, and change the items to be saved in the printing profiles.

### Icon

Select the icon for the printing profile you wish to save.

The selected icon appears, with its name, in the **Commonly Used Settings** list on the **Quick Setup** tab.

### Save the paper size setting

Saves the paper size to the printing profile in **Commonly Used Settings**.

To apply the saved paper size when the printing profile is selected, check this check box.

If this check box is unchecked, the paper size is not saved, and consequently the paper size setting is not applied when the printing profile is selected. Instead the printer prints with the paper size specified with the application software.

### Save the orientation setting

Saves the **Orientation** to the printing profile in **Commonly Used Settings**.

To apply the saved print orientation when the printing profile is selected, check this check box.

If this check box is unchecked, the print orientation is not saved, and consequently the **Orientation** setting is not applied when the printing profile is selected. Instead the printer prints with the print orientation specified with the application software.

### Save the copies setting

Saves the **Copies** setting to the printing profile in **Commonly Used Settings**.

To apply the saved copies setting when the printing profile is selected, check this check box.

If this check box is unchecked, the copies setting is not saved, and consequently the **Copies** setting is not applied when the printing profile is selected. Instead the printer prints with the copies setting specified with the application software.

## Custom Paper Size dialog box

This dialog box allows you to specify the size (width and height) of the custom paper.

### Units

Select the unit for entering a user-defined paper size.

### Paper Size

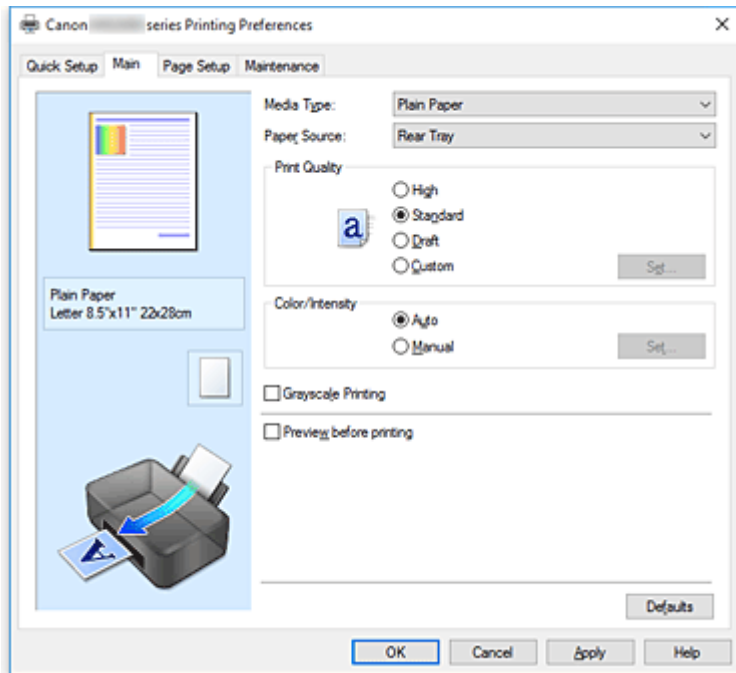
Specifies the **Width** and the **Height** of the custom paper. Measurement is shown according to the units specified in **Units**.

## Related Topics

- [Basic Printing Setup](#)
- [Setting a Page Size and Orientation](#)
- [Setting the Number of Copies and Printing Order](#)
- [Duplex Printing](#)
- [Setting Up Envelope Printing](#)
- Displaying the Print Results before Printing
- Setting Paper Dimensions (Custom Size)
- Printing a Color Document in Monochrome
- Specifying Color Correction
- Adjusting Color Balance
- Adjusting Color Balance Using Sample Patterns (Printer Driver)
- Adjusting Brightness
- Adjusting Intensity
- Adjusting Contrast
- Adjusting Intensity/Contrast Using Sample Patterns (Printer Driver)
- [Registering a Frequently Used Printing Profile](#)

## Main tab Description

The **Main** tab allows you to create a basic print setup in accordance with the media type. Unless special printing is required, normal printing can be performed just by setting the items on this tab.



### Settings Preview

The paper illustration shows how the original will be laid out on a sheet of paper. You can check an overall image of the layout.

### Media Type

Selects a type of printing paper.

Select a media type that matches the paper that is loaded in the printer. This ensures that printing is carried out properly for the specified paper.

### Paper Source

Shows the source from which paper is supplied.

#### Rear Tray

Paper is always supplied from the rear tray.

### Print Quality

Selects your desired printing quality.

Select one of the following to set the print quality level that is appropriate for the purpose.

#### »»» Important

- Depending on the **Media Type** settings, the same print results may be produced even if the **Print Quality** is changed.

#### High

Gives priority to print quality over printing speed.

#### Standard

Prints with average speed and quality.

### Draft

This setting is appropriate for test printing.

### Custom

Select this when you want to set the printing quality level individually.

### Set...

Select **Custom** for **Print Quality** to enable this button.

Open the [Custom dialog box](#). You can then individually set the print quality level.

### Color/Intensity

Selects color adjustment method.

#### Auto

**Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, Brightness, Intensity, and Contrast**, and so on are adjusted automatically.

#### Manual

Select when you set the individual settings such as **Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, Brightness, Intensity, and Contrast**, etc. and **Color Correction** method.

### Set...

Select **Manual** for **Color/Intensity** to enable this button.

In the **Manual Color Adjustment** dialog box, you can adjust individual color settings such as **Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, Brightness, Intensity, and Contrast** on the [Color Adjustment tab](#), and select the **Color Correction** method on the [Matching tab](#).

### ▶▶▶ Note

- If you want to use an ICC profile to adjust colors, use the **Manual Color Adjustment** dialog box to set the profile.

### Grayscale Printing

This function converts the data to monochrome data when printing your document.

Check this check box to print a color document in monochrome.

### Preview before printing

Shows what the print result will look like before you actually print the data.

Check this check box to display a preview before printing.

### ▶▶▶ Important

- To use the Canon IJ XPS Preview, you must have Microsoft .NET Framework 4.5.2 or later installed on your computer.

### Defaults

Restores all the settings you have changed to their default values.

Clicking this button restores all the settings on the current screen to their default values (factory settings).

## Custom dialog box

Set the quality level, and select the desired print quality.

### Quality

You can use the slider bar to adjust the print quality level.

### »»» Important

- Certain print quality levels cannot be selected depending on the settings of **Media Type**.

### »»» Note

- The **High**, **Standard**, or **Draft** print quality modes are linked with the slider bar. Therefore when the slider bar is moved, the corresponding quality and value are displayed on the left. This is the same as when the corresponding radio button is selected for **Print Quality** on the **Main** tab.

## Color Adjustment Tab

This tab allows you to adjust the color balance by changing the settings of the **Cyan**, **Magenta**, **Yellow**, **Brightness**, **Intensity**, and **Contrast** options.

### Preview

Shows the effect of color adjustment.

The color and brightness change when each item is adjusted.

### »»» Note

- The graphic is in monochrome when the **Grayscale Printing** check box is checked.

### View Color Pattern

Displays a pattern for checking color changes produced by color adjustment.

If you want to display the preview image with a color pattern, check this check box.

### Cyan / Magenta / Yellow

Adjusts the strengths of **Cyan**, **Magenta**, and **Yellow**.

Moving the slider to the right makes a color stronger, and moving the slider to the left makes a color weaker.

You can also directly enter a value linked to the slider. Enter a value in the range from -50 to 50.

This adjustment changes the relative amount of ink of each color used, which alters the total color balance of the document. Use your application if you want to change the total color balance significantly. Use the printer driver only if you want to adjust the color balance slightly.

### »»» Important

- When **Grayscale Printing** is checked on the **Main** tab, **Cyan**, **Magenta**, and **Yellow** appear grayed out and are unavailable.

### Brightness

Selects the brightness of your print.

You cannot change the levels of pure white and black. However, the brightness of the colors between white and black can be changed.

### Intensity

Adjusts the overall intensity of your print.

Moving the slider to the right increases the intensity, and moving the slider to the left decreases the intensity.

You can also directly enter a value linked to the slider. Enter a value in the range from -50 to 50.

### Contrast

Adjusts the contrast between light and dark in the image to be printed.

Moving the slider to the right increases the contrast, moving the slider to the left decreases the

contrast.

You can also directly enter a value linked to the slider. Enter a value in the range from -50 to 50.

### Print a pattern for color adjustment

When the color balance or intensity/contrast is changed, the pattern printing function prints a list of the adjustment results along with the adjustment values.

Select this function when printing a pattern for color adjustment.

### Pattern Print preferences...

Check **Print a pattern for color adjustment** to enable this button.

The [Pattern Print dialog box](#) opens and allows you to set pattern printing settings.

## Pattern Print dialog box

Performs the setup for printing of patterns that allow you to check the color balance and intensity/contrast of documents.

### Parameters to Adjust

Select the item to be checked by pattern printing.

#### Cyan/Magenta/Yellow

Prints a pattern that allows you to check the cyan/magenta/yellow balance.

#### ▶▶▶ Important

- When **Grayscale Printing** is checked on the **Main** tab, **Cyan/Magenta/Yellow** appear grayed out and are unavailable.

#### Intensity/Contrast

Prints a pattern that allows you to check the intensity/contrast balance.

### Printer Paper Size

Selects the paper size to be used for pattern printing.

This setting is linked to **Printer Paper Size** on the **Page Setup** tab.

#### ▶▶▶ Note

- Depending on the paper size selected on the **Page Setup** tab, there may be sizes that cannot be selected.

### Amount of Pattern Instances

Sets the number of patterns to be printed.

You can select from **Largest**, **Large**, and **Small**. When you select a pattern size, the number of patterns that can be printed is as follows:

#### ▶▶▶ Note

- **Largest** and **Large** cannot be selected when certain paper sizes or output paper sizes are selected.
- The setting preview on the **Main** tab displays an image that allows you to check the overall layout.

#### Largest

**Cyan/Magenta/Yellow** 37

**Intensity/Contrast** 49

## Large

Cyan/Magenta/Yellow 19

Intensity/Contrast 25

## Small

Cyan/Magenta/Yellow 7

Intensity/Contrast 9

### Color Variation Between Instances

Sets the amount of color change between neighboring patterns.

Select from **Large**, **Medium**, and **Small**. **Large** produces a large amount of change, and **Small** produces a small amount of change.

#### ►► Note

- **Large** is about double the size of **Medium**, and **Small** is about half the size of **Medium**.

## Matching Tab

Allows you to select the method for adjusting colors to match the type of document to be printed.

### Color Correction

Allows you to select **Driver Matching**, **ICM (ICC Profile Matching)**, or **None** to match the purpose of the print operation.

#### ►► Important

- When **Grayscale Printing** is checked on the **Main** tab, **Color Correction** appears grayed out and is unavailable.

### Driver Matching

With Canon Digital Photo Color, you can print sRGB data with color tints that most people prefer.

### ICM (ICC Profile Matching)

Adjusts the colors by using an ICC profile when printing.

#### ►► Important

- If the application software is set so that ICM is disabled, **ICM (ICC Profile Matching)** is unavailable for **Color Correction** and the printer may not be able to print the image data properly.

### None

Disables color adjustment with the printer driver.

#### ►► Note

- In the XPS printer driver, **ICM** has become **ICC Profile Matching**.

## Related Topics

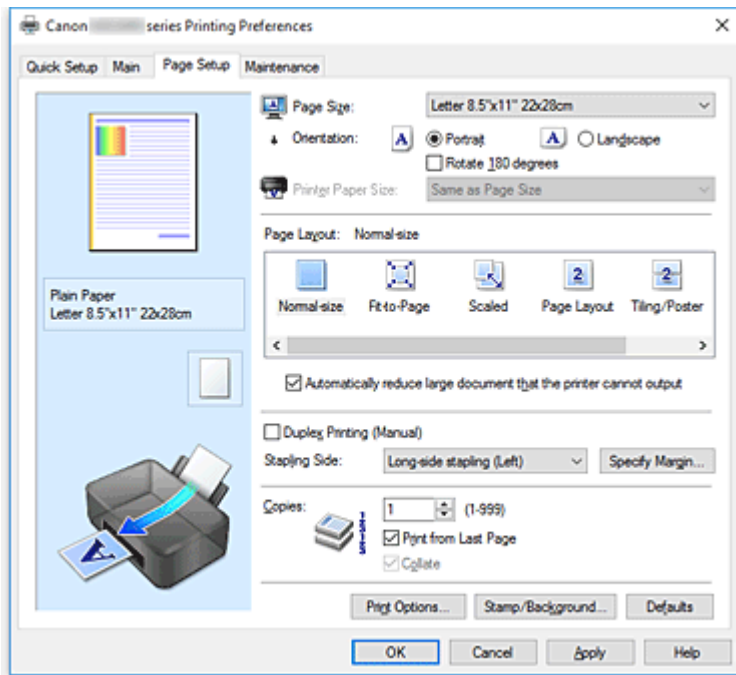
- [Setting the Print Quality Level \(Custom\)](#)
- Adjusting Color Balance
- Adjusting Brightness
- Adjusting Intensity
- Adjusting Contrast

- Adjusting Color Balance Using Sample Patterns (Printer Driver)
- Adjusting Intensity/Contrast Using Sample Patterns (Printer Driver)
- Specifying Color Correction
- Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver
- Printing with ICC Profiles
- Printing a Color Document in Monochrome
- Displaying the Print Results before Printing



## Page Setup tab Description

The **Page Setup** tab allows you to determine how a document is to be arranged on the paper. Also, this tab allows you to set the number of copies and the order of printing. If the application which created the document has a similar function, set them with the application.



### Settings Preview

The paper illustration shows how the original will be laid out on a sheet of paper. You can check an overall image of the layout.

### Page Size

Selects a page size.

Ensure that you select the same page size as you selected within the application.

If you select **Custom...**, the [Custom Paper Size dialog box](#) opens and allows you to specify any vertical and horizontal dimensions for the paper size.

### Orientation

Selects the printing orientation.

If the application used to create your document has a similar function, select the same orientation that you selected in that application.

#### Portrait

Prints the document so that its top and bottom positions are unchanged relative to the paper feed direction. This is the default setting.

#### Landscape

Prints the document by rotating it 90 degrees relative to the paper feed direction.

You can change the rotation direction by going to the **Maintenance** tab, opening the **Custom Settings** dialog box, and then using **Rotate 90 degrees left when orientation is [Landscape]** check box.

To rotate the document 90 degrees to the left when printing, select the **Rotate 90 degrees left when orientation is [Landscape]** check box.

## Rotate 180 degrees

Prints the document by rotating it 180 degrees against the paper feed direction.

The width of print area and the amount of extension that are configured in other application software will be reversed vertically and horizontally.

## Printer Paper Size

Selects the size of paper actually loaded into the printer.

The default setting is **Same as Page Size** to perform normal-sized printing.

You can select a printer paper size when you select **Fit-to-Page**, **Scaled**, **Page Layout**, **Tiling/Poster**, or **Booklet** for **Page Layout**.

If you select a paper size that is smaller than the **Page Size**, the document size will be reduced. If you select a paper size that is larger, the document size will be enlarged.

Also if you select **Custom...**, the [Custom Paper Size dialog box](#) opens and allows you to specify any vertical and horizontal dimensions for the paper size.

## Page Layout

Selects the size of the document you want to print and the type of printing.

### Normal-size

This is the normal printing method. Select this when you do not specify any page layout.

### Automatically reduce large document that the printer cannot output

If the printer cannot print the paper size of a document, the printer can automatically reduce the size when it prints the document.

Check this check box to reduce the size when printing the document.

### Fit-to-Page

This function enables you to automatically enlarge or reduce documents to fit to the paper size loaded in the printer without changing the paper size you specified in your application software.

### Scaled

Documents can be enlarged or reduced to be printed.

Specify the size in **Printer Paper Size**, or enter the scaling ratio in the **Scaling** box.

### Scaling

Specifies an enlargement or reduction ratio for the document you want to print.

### Page Layout

Multiple pages of document can be printed on one sheet of paper.

### Specify...

Opens the [Page Layout Printing dialog box](#).

Click this button to set details on page layout printing.

### Tiling/Poster

This function enables you to enlarge the image data and divide the enlarged data into several pages to be printed. You can also glue together these sheets of paper to create large printed matter, such as a poster.

### Specify...

Opens the [Tiling/Poster Printing dialog box](#).

Click this button to set details on tiling/poster printing.

### Booklet

The booklet printing function allows you to print data for a booklet. Data is printed on both sides of the paper. This type of printing ensures that pages can be collated properly, in page number order, when the printed sheets are folded and stapled at the center.

### Specify...

Opens the [Booklet Printing dialog box](#).

Click this button to set details on booklet printing.

### Duplex Printing (Manual)

Select whether to print the document to both sides of the paper manually or to one side of the paper.

Check this check box to print the document on both sides.

This function can be used only when **Plain Paper** is selected for **Media Type** and one of **Normal-size**, **Fit-to-Page**, **Scaled**, or **Page Layout** is selected.

### Stapling Side

Selects the stapling margin position.

The printer analyzes the **Orientation** and **Page Layout** settings, and automatically selects the best stapling margin position. Check **Stapling Side**, and select from the list to change it.

### Specify Margin...

Opens the [Specify Margin dialog box](#).

You can specify the width of the margin.

### Copies

Specifies the number of copies you want to print. You can specify a value from 1 to 999.

#### »» Important

- If the application used to create your document has a similar function, specify the number of copies with the application without specifying it here.

### Print from Last Page

Check this check box when you want to print from the last page in order. If you do this, you do not need to sort the pages into their correct order after printing.

Uncheck this check box to print your document in normal order, starting from the first page.

### Collate

Check this check box to group together the pages of each copy when you want to print multiple copies.

Uncheck this check box when you want to print with all pages of the same page number grouped together.

#### »» Important

- When the application software that you used to create the document has the same function, give priority to the printer driver settings. However, if the print results are not acceptable, specify the function settings on the application software. When you specify the number of copies and the printing order with both the application and this printer driver, the number of copies may be multiplied numbers of the two settings or the specified printing order may not be enabled.

### Print Options...

Opens the [Print Options dialog box](#).

Changes detailed printer driver settings for print data that is sent from applications.

### Stamp/Background... (Stamp...)

Opens the [Stamp/Background \(Stamp\) dialog box](#).

The **Stamp** function allows you to print a stamp text or a bitmap over or behind document data. It also allows you to print date, time and user name. The **Background** function allows you to print a light illustration behind the document data.

## ►► Note

- With the XPS printer driver, the **Stamp/Background...** button has become the **Stamp...** button and only the stamp function can be used.

Depending on the type of printer driver you are using and the environment, **Stamp** and **Background** may not be available.

## Custom Paper Size dialog box

This dialog box allows you to specify the size (width and height) of the custom paper.

### Units

Select the unit for entering a user-defined paper size.

### Paper Size

Specifies the **Width** and the **Height** of the custom paper. Measurement is shown according to the units specified in **Units**.

## Page Layout Printing dialog box

This dialog box allows you to select the number of document pages to be placed on one sheet of paper, the page order, and whether a page border line is to be printed around each document page.

The settings specified in this dialog box can be confirmed in the settings preview on the printer driver.

### Preview Icon

Shows the settings made on the **Page Layout Printing** dialog box.

You can check what the print result will look like before you actually print the data.

### Pages

Specifies the number of document pages to fit on one sheet.

### Page Order

Specifies the document orientation to be printed on a sheet of paper.

### Page Border

Prints a page border line around each document page.

Check this check box to print the page border line.

## Tiling/Poster Printing dialog box

This dialog box allows you to select the size of the image to be printed. You can also make settings for cut lines and paste markers which are convenient for pasting together the pages into a poster.

The settings specified in this dialog box can be confirmed in the settings preview on the printer driver.

### Preview Icon

Shows the settings of the **Tiling/Poster Printing** dialog box.

You can check what the print result will look like.

### Image Divisions

Select the number of divisions (vertical x horizontal).

As the number of divisions increases, the number of sheets used for printing increases. If you are

pastings pages together to create a poster, increasing the number of divisions allows you to create a larger poster.

#### **Print "Cut/Paste" in margins**

Specifies whether to print the words "Cut" and "Paste" in the margins. These words serve as guidelines for pasting together the pages into a poster.

Check this check box to print the words.

#### **»»» Note**

- Depending on the type of printer driver you are using and the environment, this function may not be available.

#### **Print "Cut/Paste" lines in margins**

Specifies whether to print cut lines that serve as guidelines for pasting together the pages into a poster.

Check this check box to print the cut lines.

#### **Print page range**

Specifies the printing range. Select **All** under normal circumstances.

Select **Pages** to specify a specific page or range.

#### **»»» Note**

- If some of the pages have not been printed well, specify the pages that do not need to be printed by clicking them in the settings preview of the **Page Setup** tab. Only the pages shown on the screen will be printed this time.

## **Booklet Printing dialog box**

This dialog box allows you to set how to bind the document as a booklet. Printing only on one side and printing a page border, can also be set in this dialog box.

The settings specified in this dialog box can be confirmed in the settings preview on the printer driver.

#### **Preview Icon**

Shows the settings made on the **Booklet Printing** dialog box.

You can check what the document will look like when printed as a booklet.

#### **Margin for stapling**

Specifies which side of the booklet is to be stapled.

#### **Insert blank page**

Selects whether to print the document on one side or both sides of the booklet.

Check this check box to print the document on one side of the booklet and select the side to be left blank from the list.

#### **Margin**

Specifies the width of the stapling margin.

The specified width becomes the stapling margin from the center of the sheet.

#### **Page Border**

Prints a page border line around each document page.

Check this check box to print the page border line.

## Specify Margin dialog box

This dialog box allows you to specify the margin width for the side to be stapled. If a document does not fit on one page, the document is reduced when printed.

### Margin

Specifies the width of the stapling margin.

The width of the side specified by **Stapling Side** becomes the stapling margin.

## Print Options dialog box

Makes changes to print data that is sent to the printer.

Depending on the type of printer driver you are using and the environment, this function may not be available.

### Disable ICM required from the application software

Disables the ICM function required from the application software.

When an application software uses Windows ICM to print data, unexpected colors may be produced or the printing speed may decrease. If these problems occur, checking this check box may resolve the problems.

#### ►►► Important

- Uncheck this check box under normal circumstances.
- This function does not work when **ICM** is selected for **Color Correction** on the **Matching** tab of the **Manual Color Adjustment** dialog box.

#### ►►► Note

- **Disable ICM required from the application software** tab cannot be used with the XPS printer driver.

### Disable the color profile setting of the application software

Checking this check box disables information in the color profile that was set on the application software.

When the information in the color profile set on the application software is output to the printer driver, the print result may contain unexpected colors. If this happens, checking this check box may resolve the problem.

#### ►►► Important

- Even when this check box is checked, only some of the information in the color profile is disabled, and the color profile can still be used for printing.
- Uncheck this check box under normal circumstances.

### Ungroup Papers

Sets the display method of **Media Type**, **Page Size**, and **Printer Paper Size**.

To display the items separately, select the check box.

To display the items as a group, clear the check box.

### Do not allow application software to compress print data

Compression of the application software print data is prohibited.

If the print result has missing image data or unintended colors, selecting this check box may improve the condition.

#### ▶▶▶ Important

- Uncheck this check box under normal circumstances.

#### ▶▶▶ Note

- **Do not allow application software to compress print data** tab cannot be used with the XPS printer driver.

### Print after creating print data by page

The print data is created in page units, and printing starts after the processing of one page of print data is complete.

If a printed document contains unintended results such as streaks, selecting this check box may improve the results.

#### ▶▶▶ Important

- Uncheck this check box under normal circumstances.

### Scale images using nearest-neighbor interpolation

When an image is to be enlarged or reduced when printed, the printer uses a simple interpolation process to enlarge or reduce the image.

If the image data in a printed document is not printed clearly, selecting this check box may improve the results.

#### ▶▶▶ Important

- Uncheck this check box under normal circumstances.

#### ▶▶▶ Note

- **Scale images using nearest-neighbor interpolation** can be used only with the XPS printer driver.

### Prevention of Print Data Loss

You can reduce the size of the print data that was created with the application software and then print the data.

Depending on the application software being used, the image data may be cut off or may not be printed properly. In such cases, select **On**. If you will not be using this function, select **Off**.

#### ▶▶▶ Important

- When using this function, the print quality may drop depending on the print data.

### Unit of Print Data Processing

Selects the processing unit of the print data to be sent to the printer.

Select **Recommended** under normal circumstances.

#### ▶▶▶ Important

- A large amount of memory may be used for certain settings.  
Do not change the setting if your computer has a small amount of memory.

## »»» Note

- **Unit of Print Data Processing** tab cannot be used with the XPS printer driver.

## Stamp/Background (Stamp...) dialog box

The **Stamp/Background (Stamp...)** dialog box allows you to print a stamp and/or background over or behind the document pages. In addition to the pre-registered ones, you can register and use your original stamp or background.

## »»» Note

- With the XPS printer driver, the **Stamp/Background...** button has become the **Stamp...** button and only the stamp function can be used.

### Stamp

Stamp printing is a function that prints a stamp over a document.

Check this check box and select a title from the list to print a stamp.

### Define Stamp...

Opens the [Stamp Settings dialog box](#).

You can check the details of a selected stamp or save a new stamp.

### Place stamp over text

Sets how the stamp is to be printed over the document.

Check the **Stamp** check box to enable this.

Check this check box to print a stamp over the printed document page. The printed data may be hidden behind the stamp.

Uncheck this check box to print the document data over the stamp. The printed data will not be hidden behind the stamp. However, the sections of the stamp that are overlapped by the document may be hidden.

### Print semitransparent stamp

Sets how the stamp is to be printed over the document.

Check the **Stamp** check box to enable this.

Check this check box to print a semi-transparent stamp over the printed document page.

Uncheck this check box to print the stamp over the document data. The printed data may be hidden behind the stamp.

## »»» Note

- You can use **Print semitransparent stamp** only with the XPS printer driver.

### Stamp first page only

Selects whether the stamp is to be printed on the first page only or on all pages when the document has two or more pages.

Check the **Stamp** check box to enable this.

Check this check box to print a stamp on the first page only.

### Background

Background printing is a function that allows you to print an illustration or a similar object (bitmap) behind the document.

Check this check box to print a background and select a title from the list.



## Select Background...

Opens the [Background Settings dialog box](#).

You can register a bitmap as a background, and change layout method and intensity of the selected background.

## Background first page only

Selects whether to print the background on the first page only or print on all pages when the document has two or more pages.

Check the **Background** check box to enable this.

Check this check box to print a background on the first page only.

## Stamp Tab

The Stamp tab allows you to set the text and bitmap file (.bmp) to be used for a stamp.

### Preview Window

Shows the status of the stamp configured in each tab.

### Stamp Type

Specifies the stamp type.

Select **Text** to create a stamp with characters. Select **Bitmap** to create with a bitmap file. Select **Date/Time/User Name** to display the creation date/time and user name of the printed document.

The setting items in the **Stamp** tab change depending on the selected type.

### When Stamp Type is Text or Date/Time/User Name

#### Stamp Text

Specifies the stamp text string.

Up to 64 characters can be entered.

For **Date/Time/User Name**, the creation date/time and user name of the printed object are displayed in **Stamp Text**.

#### ▶▶▶ Important

- **Stamp Text** appears grayed out and is unavailable if **Date/Time/User Name** is selected.

#### TrueType Font

Selects the font for the stamp text string.

#### Style

Selects the font style for the stamp text string.

#### Size

Selects the font size for the stamp text string.

#### Outline

Selects a frame that encloses the stamp text string.

If a large font size is selected for **Size**, characters may extend outside of the stamp border.

#### Color/Select Color...

Shows the current color for the stamp.

To select a different color, click **Select Color...** to open the **Color** dialog box, and select or create a color you wish to use as a stamp.

### When Stamp Type is Bitmap

## File

Specifies the name of the bitmap file to be used as the stamp.

## Select File...

Opens the dialog box to open a file.

Click this button to select a bitmap file to be used as a stamp.

## Size

Adjusts the size of the bitmap file to be used as a stamp.

Moving the slider to the right increases the size, moving the slider to the left decreases the size.

## Transparent white area

Specifies whether to make white-filled areas of the bitmap transparent.

Check this check box to make white-filled areas of the bitmap transparent.

## »» Note

- Click **Defaults** to set **Stamp Type** to text, **Stamp Text** to blank, **TrueType Font** to Arial, **Style** to Regular, **Size** to 36 points, **Outline** unchecked, and **Color** to gray with the RGB values (192, 192, 192).

## Placement Tab

The Placement tab allows you to set the position where the stamp is to be printed.

## Preview Window

Shows the status of the stamp configured in each tab.

## Position

Specifies the stamp position on the page.

Selecting **Custom** from the list allows you to enter values for the **X-Position** and **Y-Position** coordinates directly.

## Orientation

Specifies the angle of rotation for the stamp. The angle can be set by entering the number of degrees.

Negative values rotate the stamp clockwise.

## »» Note

- **Orientation** is enabled only when **Text** or **Date/Time/User Name** is selected for **Stamp Type** on the **Stamp** tab.

## »» Note

- Click **Defaults** to set the stamp position to **Center** and the orientation to 0.

## Save settings Tab

The **Save settings** tab allows you to register a new stamp or delete an unnecessary stamp.

## Title

Enter the title to save the stamp you created.

Up to 64 characters can be entered.

## »» Note

- Spaces, tabs, and returns cannot be entered at the beginning or end of a title.

### Stamps

Shows a list of saved stamp titles.

Specify a title to display the corresponding stamp in **Title**.

### Save/Save overwrite

Saves the stamp.

Enter a title in **Title**, and then click this button.

### Delete

Deletes an unnecessary stamp.

Specify the title of an unnecessary stamp from the **Stamps** list, and click this button.

## Background Tab

The Background tab allows you to select a bitmap file (.bmp) to be used as a background or determine how to print the selected background.

### Preview Window

Shows the status of the bitmap set on the **Background** tab.

### File

Specifies the name of the bitmap file to be used as the background.

### Select File...

Opens the dialog box to open a file.

Click this button to select a bitmap file (.bmp) to be used as the background.

### Layout Method

Specifies how the background image is to be placed on the paper.

When **Custom** is selected, you can set coordinates for **X-Position** and **Y-Position**.

### Intensity

Adjusts the intensity of the bitmap to be used as a background.

Moving the slider to the right increases the intensity, and moving the slider to the left decreases the intensity. To print the background at the original bitmap intensity, move the slider to the rightmost position.

## »» Note

- Depending on the type of printer driver you are using and the environment, this function may not be available.
- Click **Defaults** to set **File** to blank, **Layout Method** to **Fill page**, and the **Intensity** slider to the middle.

## Save settings Tab

The **Save settings** tab allows you to register a new background or delete an unnecessary background.

**Title**

Enter the title to save the background image you specified.

Up to 64 characters can be entered.

**»» Note**

- Spaces, tabs, and returns cannot be entered at the beginning or end of a title.

**Backgrounds**

Shows a list of registered background titles.

Specify a title to display the corresponding background in **Title**.

**Save/Save overwrite**

Saves the image data as a background.

After inserting the **Title**, click this button.

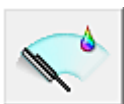
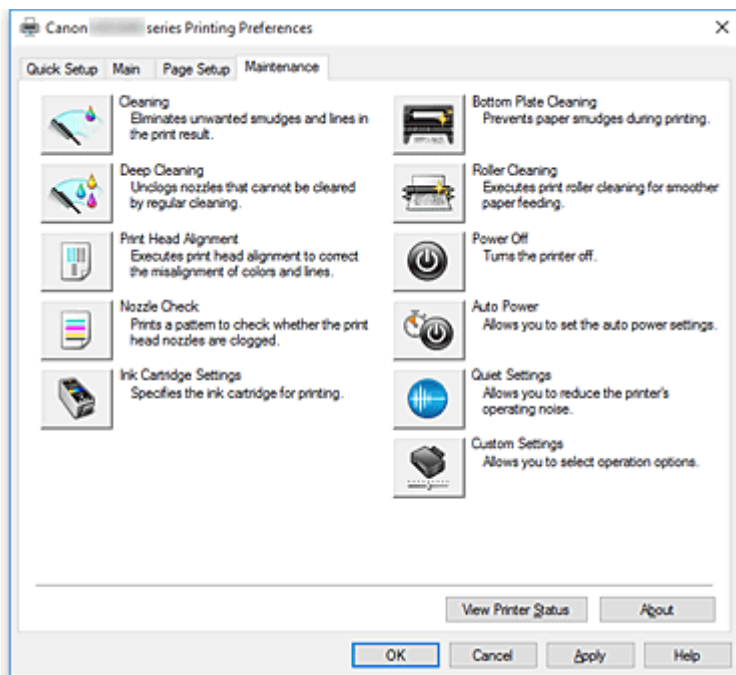
**Delete**

Deletes an unnecessary background.

Specify the title of an unnecessary background from the **Backgrounds** list, and then click this button.

# Maintenance tab Description

The **Maintenance** tab allows you to perform printer maintenance or change the settings of the printer.



## Cleaning

Performs print head cleaning.

Print head cleaning removes any blockage in the print head nozzles.

Perform cleaning when printing becomes faint, or a specific color fails to print, even though all ink levels are sufficiently high.



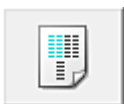
## Deep Cleaning

Performs deep cleaning.

Perform deep cleaning when two cleaning attempts do not resolve the print head problem.

### ►►► Note

- **Deep Cleaning** consumes a larger amount of ink than **Cleaning**.  
Cleaning the print heads frequently will rapidly deplete your printer's ink supply. Therefore, perform cleaning only when necessary.



## Print Head Alignment

Print head alignment corrects the installation positions of the print head and improves deviated colors and lines.

Align the print head immediately after installing the print head.

When you click **Print Head Alignment**, the [Start Print Head Alignment dialog box](#) is displayed.



## Nozzle Check

Prints a nozzle check pattern.

Perform this function if printing becomes faint or a specific color fails to print. Print a nozzle check pattern, and check whether the print head is working properly.

If the print result for a specific color is faded, or if there are any unprinted sections, click **Cleaning** to clean the print head.

To display a list of items that you should check before printing the nozzle check pattern, click [Initial Check Items](#).

### Print Check Pattern

This function prints a pattern that allows you to check whether any of the ink nozzles are clogged.

Click **Print Check Pattern**. When the confirmation message is displayed, click **OK**. The **Pattern Check** dialog box is then displayed.

#### Left-side bitmap (good)

The print head nozzles are not clogged.

#### Right-side bitmap (bad)

The print head nozzles may be clogged.

### Exit

Closes the **Pattern Check** dialog box, and returns to the **Maintenance** tab.

### Cleaning

Performs print head cleaning.

Print head cleaning removes any blockage in the print head nozzles.

Perform cleaning when printing becomes faint, or if a specific color fails to print, even though all ink levels are sufficiently high.



## Ink Cartridge Settings

Opens the [Ink Cartridge Settings dialog box](#).

Use this function to specify the FINE cartridge you want to use.



## Bottom Plate Cleaning

Performs cleaning of the bottom plate of the printer.

To prevent smudges on the back side of a sheet of paper, perform **Bottom Plate Cleaning** before you perform duplex printing.

Also perform **Bottom Plate Cleaning** if ink smudges caused by something other than print data appear on the printed page.



## Roller Cleaning

Cleans the paper feed rollers.

Paper feeding may fail if paper dust has stuck to the printer's paper feed rollers. In this case, clean the paper feed rollers to improve the print result.



### Power Off

Turns off the printer from the printer driver.

Perform this function to turn off the printer when you cannot press the ON button (POWER button) on the printer because the printer is out of your reach.

You must press the ON button (POWER button) on the printer to turn the printer on again after clicking this button. When you use this function, you will not be able to turn the printer on from the printer driver.



### Auto Power

Opens the [Auto Power Settings dialog box](#).

Specify settings for operating the printer power automatically. Perform this function if you want to change the auto power settings.

#### ►►► Note

- If the printer is off or if communication between the printer and the computer is disabled, an error message may appear because the computer cannot collect the printer status.  
If this happens, click **OK** to display the most recent settings specified on your computer.



### Quiet Settings

Opens the [Quiet Settings dialog box](#).

**Quiet Settings** dialog box allows you to specify a setting that reduces the operating noise of the printer. This mode comes in handy when the operating noise of the printer becomes a concern, such when printing at night. Perform this operation when you want to change the quiet mode setting.

#### ►►► Note

- If the printer is off or if communication between the printer and the computer is disabled, an error message may appear because the computer cannot collect the printer status.



### Custom Settings

Opens the [Custom Settings dialog box](#).

Perform this function to change the settings of this printer.

#### ►►► Note

- If the printer is off or if communication between the printer and the computer is disabled, an error message may appear because the computer cannot collect the printer status.  
If this happens, click **OK** to display the most recent settings specified on your computer.

### View Print History

This function starts the Canon IJ XPS preview, and displays the print history.

#### ►►► Note

- You can use this function only with the XPS printer driver.

## View Printer Status

Starts the Canon IJ Status Monitor.

Perform this function when you want to check the printer status and how a print job is proceeding.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- If you are using the XPS printer driver, the "Canon IJ Status Monitor" becomes the "Canon IJ XPS Status Monitor".

## About

Opens the [About dialog box](#).

The version of the printer driver, plus a copyright notice, can be checked.

In addition, the language to be used can be switched.

## Initial Check Items (Cleaning / Deep Cleaning)

Before running **Cleaning** or **Deep Cleaning**, check that the printer power is on, and open the cover of the printer.

Check the following items for each ink.

- [Check the amount of ink](#) remaining in the cartridge.
- Make sure that you push in the ink cartridge completely until you hear a clicking sound.
- If an orange tape is adhered to the ink cartridge, peel it off completely.  
Any remaining tape will hinder ink output.
- Check that the ink cartridges are installed in their correct positions.

## Start Print Head Alignment dialog box

This dialog box allows you to adjust the attachment position for the print head, or to print the current setting value for the print head position.

### Align Print Head

Aligns the print head.

Print head alignment corrects the installation positions of the print head and improves deviated colors and lines.

Align the print head immediately after installing the print head.

### Print Alignment Value

Click this button to check the current setting value of the print head position.

Prints the current setting value for the print head position.

## Print Head Alignment dialog box

To adjust the print head position manually, click **Align Print Head** in the **Start Print Head Alignment** dialog box, and perform the operations instructed in the messages. The **Print Head Alignment** dialog box is then displayed.

This dialog box allows you to check the printed pattern and adjust the print head position.

### Preview Window

Displays the pattern of **Print Head Alignment**, and checks the position of the selected pattern.

You can also change the setting by clicking the pattern on the screen directly.



### Select the Pattern Number

Compare the printed adjustment patterns, and enter the pattern number of the pattern with the least visible streaks or horizontal stripes into the corresponding box.

### ►► Note

- If you do not know how to analyze the printed pattern, see Adjusting Print Head Position.

## Initial Check Items (Nozzle Check)

Before running **Nozzle Check**, check that the printer power is on, and open the cover of the printer. Check the following items for each ink.

- [Check the amount of ink](#) remaining in the cartridge.
- Make sure that you push in the ink cartridge completely until you hear a clicking sound.
- If an orange tape is adhered to the ink cartridge, peel it off completely. Any remaining tape will hinder ink output.
- Check that the ink cartridges are installed in their correct positions.

## Ink Cartridge Settings dialog box

When you click **Ink Cartridge Settings**, the **Ink Cartridge Settings** dialog box is displayed. This feature enables you to specify the most appropriate FINE cartridge among installed cartridges according to an intended use.

When one of the FINE cartridges becomes empty and cannot be replaced immediately by a new one, you can specify the other FINE cartridge that still has ink and continue printing.

### Ink Cartridge

Selects the FINE cartridge you use for printing.

#### Color Only

Uses the color FINE cartridge only.

#### Black Only

Uses the black FINE cartridge only.

#### Both Black and Color

Uses the FINE cartridges installed on the printer, which are color and black.

### ►► Important

- When a setting other than **Plain Paper** or **Envelope** is selected for **Media Type** on the **Main** tab, **Black Only** is disabled because the printer uses the color FINE cartridge to print documents.
- Do not detach the FINE cartridge that is not in use. Printing cannot be performed while either FINE cartridge is detached.

## Auto Power Settings dialog box

When you click **Auto Power**, the **Auto Power Settings** dialog box is displayed. This dialog box allows you to manage the printer power from the printer driver.

### Auto Power On

Selects the auto power-on setting.

Specify **Disable** to prevent the printer from turning on automatically when print data is sent to it.

Make sure the printer is on and then click **OK** to change the printer settings.

Specify **Enable** to turn the printer on automatically when print data is sent to it.

### Auto Power Off

Selects the auto power-off setting.

If a printer driver operation or a printer operation is not performed within the specified time, the printer turns off.

## Quiet Settings dialog box

When you click **Quiet Settings**, the **Quiet Settings** dialog box is displayed.

**Quiet Settings** dialog box allows you to specify a setting that reduces the operating noise of the printer.

Select when you wish to reduce the operating noise of the printer at night, etc.

Using this function may lower the print speed.

### Do not use quiet mode

Select this option when you wish to use the printer with volume of normal operating noise.

### Always use quiet mode

Select this option when you wish to reduce the operating noise of the printer.

### Use quiet mode during specified hours

Select this option when you wish to reduce the operating noise of the printer during a specified period of time.

Set the **Start time** and the **End time** of the quiet mode you wish to be activated. If both are set to the same time, the quiet mode will not function.

## »» Important

- You can set the quiet mode from the printer, the printer driver, or ScanGear (scanner driver). No matter how you use to set the quiet mode, the mode is applied when you perform operations from the printer or printing and scanning from the computer.
- If you specify a time for **Use quiet mode during specified hours**, quiet mode is not applied to operations (copy, direct print, etc.) performed directly from the printer.

## Custom Settings dialog box

When you click **Custom Settings**, the **Custom Settings** dialog box is displayed.

If necessary, switch between various modes of printer operation.

### Align heads manually

Usually, the **Print Head Alignment** function on the **Maintenance** tab is set to automatic head alignment, but you can change it to manual head alignment.

If the printing results of automatic print head alignment are not satisfactory, perform manual head alignment.

Check this check box to perform the manual head alignment.

## Rotate 90 degrees left when orientation is [Landscape]

On the **Page Setup** tab, you can change the rotation direction of the **Landscape** in the **Orientation**. To rotate the document 90 degrees to the left when printing, select the check box.

### ►►► Note

- If **Envelope Com 10**, or **Envelope DL** is selected for **Page Size** on the **Page Setup** tab, the printer rotates the paper 90 degrees to the left to print, regardless of the **Rotate 90 degrees left when orientation is [Landscape]** setting for **Custom Settings** on the **Maintenance** tab.

## Ink Drying Wait Time

The printer can pause before printing a subsequent page. Moving the slider to the right increases the pause time, and moving the slider to the left decreases the time.

If the paper gets stained because the next page is ejected before the ink on the printed page dries, increase the ink drying wait time.

Reducing the ink drying wait time speeds up printing.

## About dialog box

When you click **About**, the **About** dialog box is displayed.

This dialog box displays the version, copyright, and module list of the printer driver. You can select the language to be used and switch the language displayed in the setup window.

### Modules

Lists the printer driver modules.

### Language

Specifies the language you wish to use in the [printer driver setup window](#).

### ►►► Important

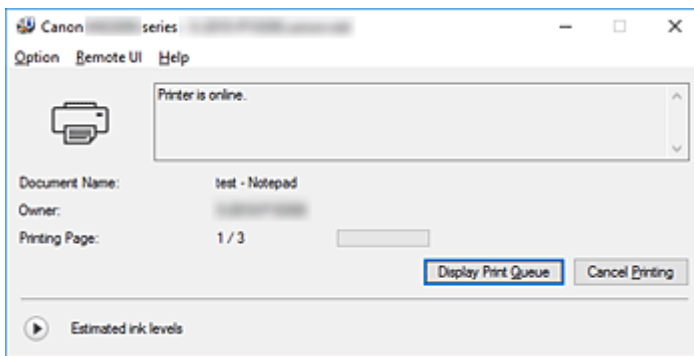
- If the font for displaying the language of your choice is not installed in your system, the characters will be garbled.

## Related Topics

- [Cleaning the Print Heads](#)
- [Adjusting Print Head Position](#)
- [Printing a Nozzle Check Pattern](#)
- [Setting the Ink Cartridge to be Used](#)
- [Cleaning Inside the Printer](#)
- [Cleaning the Paper Feed Rollers](#)
- [Managing the Printer Power](#)
- [Reducing the Printer Noise](#)
- [Changing the Printer Operation Mode](#)

## Canon IJ Status Monitor Screen

The Canon IJ Status Monitor displays the printer status and the printing progress. The printer status is shown by the images, icons, and messages in the status monitor.



## Features of the Canon IJ Status Monitor

The Canon IJ Status Monitor has the following functions:

### Onscreen display of printer status

The status monitor displays the printer status in real-time.

You can check the progress of each document to be printed (print job).

### Display of error content and correction procedure

The status monitor displays information on any errors that occur on the printer.

You can then immediately check what sort of action to perform.

### Ink status display

The status monitor displays FINE cartridge types and estimated ink levels.

When the remaining ink level becomes low, a warning icon and message (low ink level warning) are displayed.

## Overview of the Canon IJ Status Monitor

The Canon IJ Status Monitor uses images and messages to display the printer status and the ink status.

During printing, you can check information about the document being printed and the print progress.

If an error occurs, the status monitor displays the error content and instructions on how to correct the error. Follow the message instructions.

### Printer

Canon IJ Status Monitor shows an icon when a warning or error occurs to the printer.



: There is a warning.



: There has been an operator error.



: There is a notice about ink levels etc.



: There has been an error which requires a service.

### FINE cartridges

If a low ink warning or an empty ink cartridge error occurs, the status monitor displays an icon.

The status monitor also uses images to display the estimated ink levels of the FINE cartridges.

Click the image to display the **Ink Details** dialog box showing detailed information such as the

remaining ink levels and the names of FINE cartridges that the printer can use.

The colors are calibrated to match the color with the least amount of ink remaining, and then all colors are displayed at the same level.

**Document Name**

Name of the document being printed.

**Owner**

Owner's name of the document being printed.

**Printing Page**

Page number of current page and the total page count.

**Display Print Queue**


The print queue, which controls the current document and documents waiting to be printed.

**Cancel Printing**

Cancels printing.

**Estimated ink levels**

Displays icons to report a remaining ink level warning and an ink depletion error.

Click  (the disclosure triangle) to display a pictorial representation of the estimated ink level in the FINE cartridge.

**Ink Model Number**

You can look up the correct FINE cartridge for your printer.

**Option Menu**

If a printer message appears, select **Enable Status Monitor** to start the Canon IJ Status Monitor. Select **Enable Status Monitor** to use the following commands:

**Always Display Current Job**

Displays the Canon IJ Status Monitor whenever a document is being printed.

**Always Display on Top**

Displays the Canon IJ Status Monitor in front of other windows.

**Display Warning Automatically****When a Low Ink Warning Occurs**

Starts the Canon IJ Status Monitor window automatically and displays it in front of the other windows when a low ink warning occurs.

**Start when Windows is Started**

Automatically starts the Canon IJ Status Monitor when Windows is started.

**Remote UI menu**

You are able to open the printer's Remote User Interface.

You are able to check the printer status and run maintenance functions on the printer when connected to and using it through a network.

**►►► Note**

- When the printer is being used via USB connection **Remote UI** will not display.

**Printer Information**

Allows you check detailed information, such as the printer status, the print progress, and remaining ink levels.

**Maintenance**

Allows you to run printer maintenance and change printer settings.

**Download Security Certificate**

Displays the **For secure communication** window.

This window allows you to download the route certificate, register it to the browser, and disable warning displays.

**Help Menu**

Select this menu to display Help information for the Canon IJ Status Monitor including version and copyright information.

## Installing the MP Drivers

You can access our web site through the Internet and download the latest MP Drivers and XPS printer driver for your model.

The procedure for installing the downloaded MP Drivers is as follows:

1. Turn off the printer

2. Start the installer

Double-click the icon of the downloaded file.

The installation program starts.

### ▶▶▶ Important

- A confirmation/warning dialog box may appear when starting, installing or uninstalling software. This dialog box appears when administrative rights are required to perform a task. When you are logged on to an administrator account, click **Yes** (or **Continue, Allow**) to continue. Some applications require an administrator account to continue. In such cases, switch to an administrator account, and restart the operation from the beginning.

3. Install the MP Drivers

Take the appropriate action as described on the screen.

4. Complete the installation

Click **Complete**.

Depending on the environment you are using, a message prompting you to restart the computer may be displayed. To complete the installation properly, restart the computer.

### ▶▶▶ Important

- You can install the XPS printer driver with the same procedure for installing the MP Drivers. However, when installing the XPS printer driver, first complete installation of the MP Drivers.
- You can download the MP Drivers and XPS printer driver for free, but any Internet access charges incurred are your responsibility.
- Before installing the latest MP Drivers, delete the previously installed version.

## Related Topics

- Obtaining the Latest MP Drivers
- Deleting the Unnecessary MP Drivers
- Before Installing the MP Drivers

## Printing Directly from Smartphone/Tablet

- ▶ **Android Print**
- ▶ **Using Printer with Wireless Direct**



## Using Printer with Wireless Direct

You can connect devices (e.g. smartphone or tablet) to the printer by two methods below.

- Wireless connection (connecting devices via a wireless router)
- Direct wireless connection (connecting devices using wireless direct)

This section describes wireless direct, which allows you to print by connecting the devices to the printer directly.

Follow the procedure below to use wireless direct.

1. [Enable wireless direct.](#)
2. [Connect devices to printer.](#)
3. [Perform printing operation.](#)

This section also describes changing wireless direct to wireless LAN.

### ■ [Changing Printer Setting to Use Wireless LAN](#)

### ▶▶▶ Important

- You can connect up to 5 devices to the printer at the same time.
- Check the usage restrictions and switch the printer to the wireless direct.

#### ■ [Restrictions](#)

## Preparing for Wireless Direct

Change settings below to prepare for wireless direct.

- Printer's LAN settings
  - [Changing Printer's Settings](#)
- Settings of a device to connect
  - [Changing Settings of a Device and Connecting It to the Printer](#)

## Changing Printer's Settings

1. [Make sure printer is turned on.](#)
2. Press and hold the **Wi-Fi** button and release it when the **Wi-Fi** lamp flashes.
3. Press the **Black** button.  
The **ON** lamp flashes and the **Wi-Fi** lamp lights.
4. Press the **Wi-Fi** button repeatedly until the **Direct** lamp lights.  
When the lamps light as below, wireless direct is enabled.



5. Press the **Color** button or the **Black** button to finalize selection.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- To check the printer's MAC address and serial number, and the current wireless direct settings, print out the network setting information.

■ [Printing Network Settings](#)

## Changing Settings of a Device and Connecting It to the Printer

1. Turn on wireless communication on your device.

Enable "Wi-Fi" on your device's "Setting" menu.

For more on turning on wireless communication, see your device's instruction manual.

2. Select "XXXXXX-MG3000 series" ("XXXXXX" represents last six digits of printer's MAC address.) from list displayed on device.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- If "XXXXXX-MG3000 series" does not appear on the list, wireless direct is not enabled.  
See [Changing Printer's Settings](#) to enable wireless direct.

3. Enter password.

Your device is connected to the printer.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- Check the password for the wireless direct.  
■ [Printing Network Settings](#)
- Depending on the device you are using, entering the password is required to connect a device to the printer via wireless LAN. Enter the password specified for the printer.

## Printing with Wireless Direct

Connect a device and the printer and start printing from the device's application.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- For more on printing from a device via wireless LAN, refer to the device's or application's instruction manual.
- You can print from your smartphone or tablet by installing Canon PRINT Inkjet/SELPHY. Download it from App Store and Google Play.

- For iOS
- For Android

## Changing Printer Setting to Use Wireless LAN

Follow the procedure below to change the printer setting to use wireless LAN.

1. [Make sure printer is turned on.](#)
2. Press and hold the **Wi-Fi** button and release it when the **Wi-Fi** lamp flashes.
3. Press the **Black** button.  
The **ON** lamp flashes and the **Wi-Fi** lamp lights.
4. Press the **Wi-Fi** button repeatedly until the **Network** lamp lights.

When the lamps light as below, wireless LAN is enabled.



5. Press the **Color** button or the **Black** button to finalize selection.

## Making Copies on Plain Paper

Load the original on the platen glass to copy.

1. [Make sure that the printer is turned on.](#)
2. [Load A4 or Letter-sized plain paper.](#)
3. [Load the original on the platen glass.](#)

### ▶▶▶ Note

- You can switch the size of paper loaded in the rear tray between A4 and Letter.

■ [Switching Page Size between A4 and Letter](#)

4. Press the **Color** button for color copying, or the **Black** button for black & white copying.

The printer starts copying.

Remove the original on the platen glass after copying is complete.

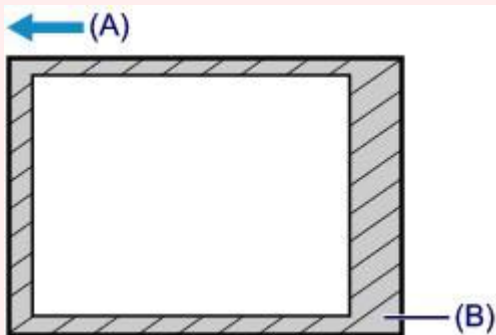
#### To make multiple copies

Press the **Color** button or the **Black** button repeatedly according to the number of copies you want.

Press the same button (**Color** button or **Black** button) as the one which you previously pressed.

### ▶▶▶ Important

- Do not open the document cover or remove the original from the platen glass until scanning is completed.  
While the printer is scanning the original, the **ON** lamp keeps flashing.
- If the original covers the whole page, area (B) in the figure below cannot be printed.



(A) The direction in which the paper is ejected

(B) Unprintable area

For details on the printable area:

■ [Standard Sizes](#)

### ▶▶▶ Note

- To cancel copying, press the **Stop** button.

- **To set the print quality to "Draft" (speed priority)**

You can set the print quality to "Draft" (speed priority) following the procedure below.

1. Press and hold down the **Color** or **Black** button for 2 or more seconds in step 4.

The **ON** lamp flashes once.

2. Release the button.

The printer starts copying.

When the print quality is set to "Draft", print speed is given priority over quality. To give priority to quality, press the **Color** or **Black** button for less than 2 seconds to copy in the print quality "Standard".

## Switching Page Size between A4 and Letter

This setting is useful if you usually load Letter-sized paper in the rear tray.

1. [Make sure that the printer is turned on.](#)
2. Press and hold the **Stop** button until the **Alarm** lamp flashes 10 times.
3. Release the **Stop** button.  
The **ON** lamp starts flashing instead of remaining lit.
4. Press the **Black** button to select A4, or the **Color** button to select Letter.  
The **ON** lamp stops flashing and remains lit, then the paper size is changed.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- When you switch the page size to A4 or Letter, load paper of the selected size.  
When the page size is set to A4, load A4 plain paper.  
When the page size is set to Letter, load Letter-sized plain paper.
- This setting is retained even if the printer is turned off.

## Scanning from Computer (Windows)

- ▶ [Using IJ Scan Utility](#)
- ▶ [Scanning Using Application Software \(ScanGear\)](#)
- ▶ **Other Scanning Methods**
- ▶ **IJ Network Scanner Selector EX2 Menu and Setting Screen**
- ▶ **Scanning Tips**
  - [Positioning Originals \(Scanning from Computer\)](#)
  - [Network Scan Settings](#)

## Using IJ Scan Utility

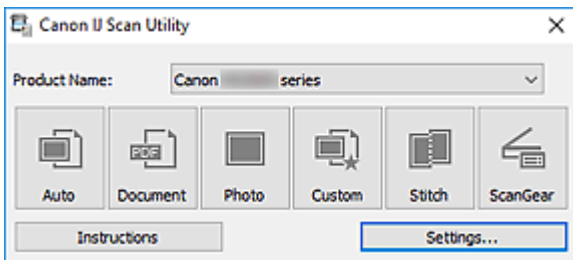
- ▶ **What Is IJ Scan Utility (Scanner Software)?**
- ▶ **Starting IJ Scan Utility**
- ▶ **Using Auto Scan Function** 📄 **Basics**
- ▶ **Scanning Documents**
- ▶ **Scanning Photos**
- ▶ **Scanning Multiple Originals at One Time**
- ▶ **IJ Scan Utility Screens**



# What Is IJ Scan Utility (Scanner Software)?

IJ Scan Utility is an application for scanning documents, photos, and other items.

Access all scanning functions to scan and save directly, from the icons in the IJ Scan Utility main screen.



## IJ Scan Utility Features

### Multiple Scanning Modes

**Auto** allows for one click scanning with default settings for various items. **Document** will sharpen text in a document or magazine for better readability, and **Photo** is best suited for scanning photos.

#### ►►► Note

- For details on the IJ Scan Utility main screen, see [IJ Scan Utility Main Screen](#).

### Save Scanned Images Automatically

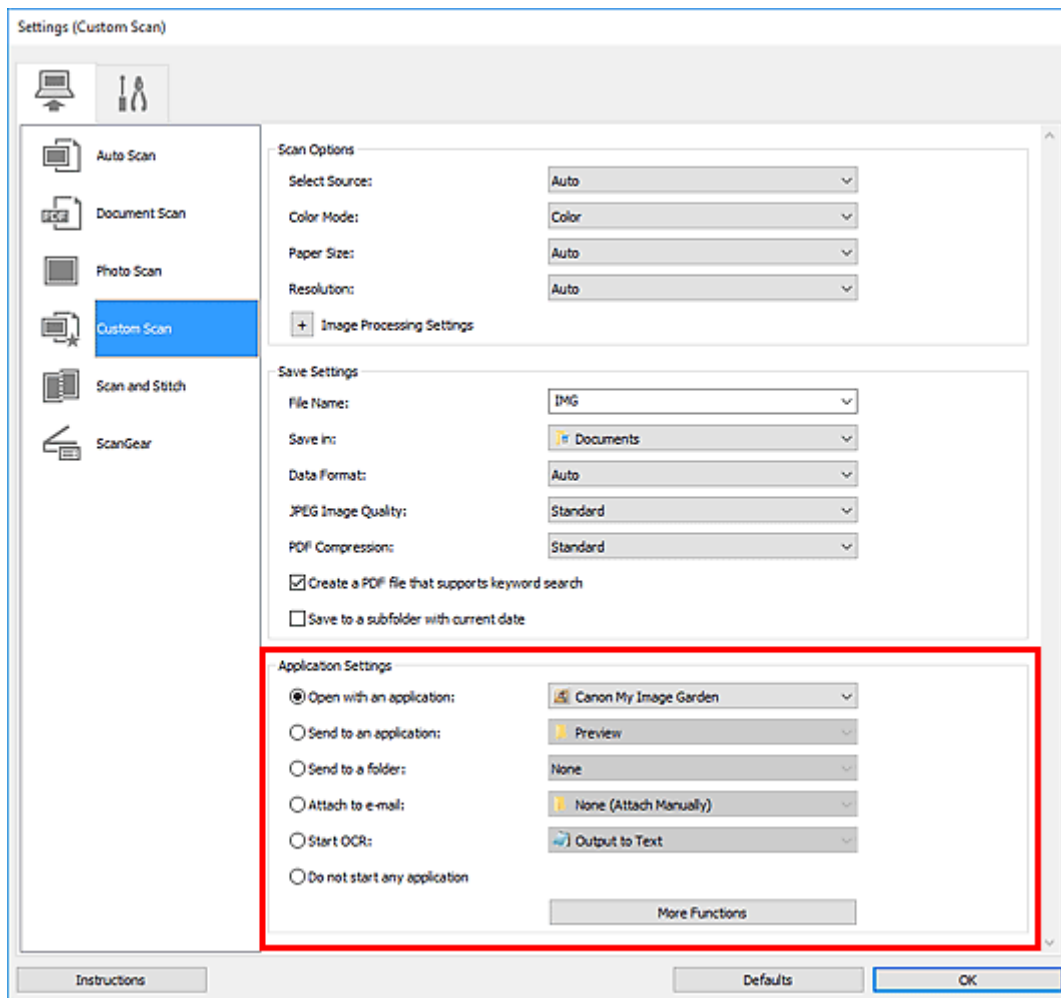
Scanned images are automatically saved to a preset folder. The folder can be changed as needed.

#### ►►► Note

- The default save folders are as follows.
  - **Windows 10/Windows 8.1/Windows Vista:**  
**Documents** folder
  - **Windows 8/Windows 7:**  
**My Documents** folder
- To change folder, see [Settings Dialog Box](#).

### Application Integration

Scanned images can be sent to other applications. For example, display scanned images in your favorite graphics application, attach them to e-mails, or extract text from images.



### »»» Important

- Some functions are available only when My Image Garden is installed.

### »»» Note

- To set the applications to integrate with, see [Settings Dialog Box](#).

# Starting IJ Scan Utility

## ▶▶▶ Note

- If you have more than one scanner or have changed from USB to network connection, set up the network environment from IJ Scan Utility.

■ [Network Scan Settings](#)

Follow the steps below to start IJ Scan Utility.

### Windows 10:

From **Start** menu, select **All apps > Canon Utilities > IJ Scan Utility**.

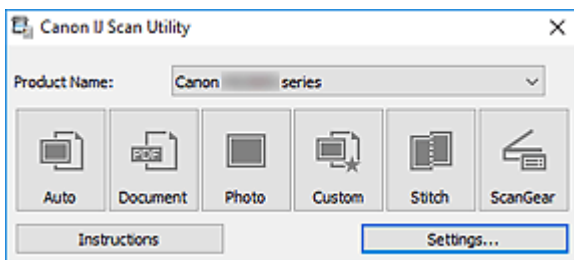
### Windows 8.1/Windows 8:

Select **IJ Scan Utility** on the Start screen.

If **IJ Scan Utility** is not displayed on the Start screen, select the **Search** charm, and then search for "IJ Scan Utility".

### Windows 7/Windows Vista:

From **Start** menu, select **All Programs > Canon Utilities > IJ Scan Utility > IJ Scan Utility**.



# Using Auto Scan Function

Auto Scan allows for automatic detection of the item type.

## ▶▶▶ Important

- The following types of items may not be scanned correctly. In that case, adjust the cropping frames (scan areas) in whole image view of ScanGear (scanner driver), and then scan again.
  - Photos with a whitish background
  - Items printed on white paper, hand-written text, business cards, and other unclear items
  - Thin items
  - Thick items

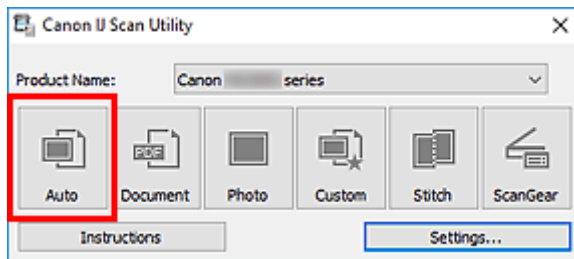
1. Make sure scanner or printer is turned on.

2. Place items on platen.

■ [Positioning Originals \(Scanning from Computer\)](#)

3. [Start IJ Scan Utility.](#)

4. Click **Auto**.



Scanning starts.

## ▶▶▶ Note

- To cancel the scan, click **Cancel**.
- To apply suitable corrections based on the item type, click **Settings...**, and then select the **Apply recommended image correction** checkbox in the **Settings (Auto Scan)** dialog box.
- Scanned images are saved in the folder set for **Save in** in the [Settings \(Auto Scan\) dialog box](#) displayed by clicking **Settings...**. In the **Settings (Auto Scan)** dialog box, advanced scan settings can also be made.
- To scan a specific item type, see the following pages.
  - Scanning Photos
  - Scanning Documents
  - Scanning with Favorite Settings

## IJ Scan Utility Screens

- ▶ **IJ Scan Utility Main Screen**
- ▶ **Settings Dialog Box**
  - **Settings (Auto Scan) Dialog Box**
  - **Settings (Document Scan) Dialog Box**
  - Settings (Photo Scan) Dialog Box
  - **Settings (General Settings) Dialog Box**

## IJ Scan Utility Main Screen

Follow the steps below to start IJ Scan Utility.

### Windows 10:

From **Start** menu, select **All apps > Canon Utilities > IJ Scan Utility** to start IJ Scan Utility.

### Windows 8.1/Windows 8:

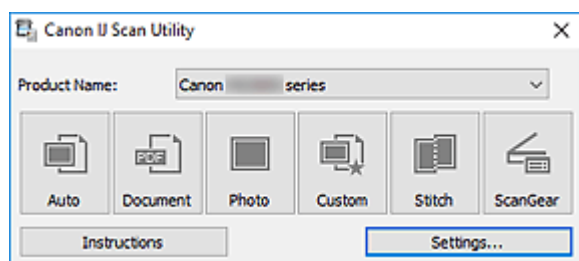
Select **IJ Scan Utility** on Start screen to start IJ Scan Utility.

If **IJ Scan Utility** is not displayed on the Start screen, select the **Search** charm, and then search for "IJ Scan Utility".

### Windows 7/Windows Vista:

From **Start** menu, select **All Programs > Canon Utilities > IJ Scan Utility > IJ Scan Utility** to start IJ Scan Utility.

You can complete from scanning to saving at one time by simply clicking the corresponding icon.



### Product Name

Displays the name of the product that IJ Scan Utility is currently set to use.

If the displayed product is not the one you want to use, select the desired product from the list.

In addition, for network connection, select one with "Network" after the product name.

### ►►► Note

- Refer to "[Network Scan Settings](#)" for how to set up a network environment.

### Auto

Detects the item type automatically and saves them to a computer. The data format for saving will also be set automatically.

Save settings and the response after scanning can be specified in the [Settings \(Auto Scan\) dialog box](#).

### Document

Scans items as documents and saves them to a computer.

Scan/save settings and the response after scanning can be specified in the [Settings \(Document Scan\) dialog box](#).

### Photo

Scans items as photos and saves them to a computer.

Scan/save settings and the response after scanning can be specified in the Settings (Photo Scan) dialog box.

**Custom**

Scans items with your favorite settings and saves the images to a computer. The item type can be automatically detected.

Scan/save settings and the response after scanning can be specified in the Settings (Custom Scan) dialog box.

**Stitch**

Displays the **Image Stitch** window in which you can scan the left and right halves of an item larger than the platen and combine the scanned images back into one image.

Scan/save settings and the response after scanning can be specified in the Settings (Scan and Stitch) dialog box.

**ScanGear**

Starts ScanGear (scanner driver) in which you can make image corrections and color adjustments when scanning.

Scan/save settings and applications can be specified in the Settings (ScanGear) dialog box.



**Instructions**

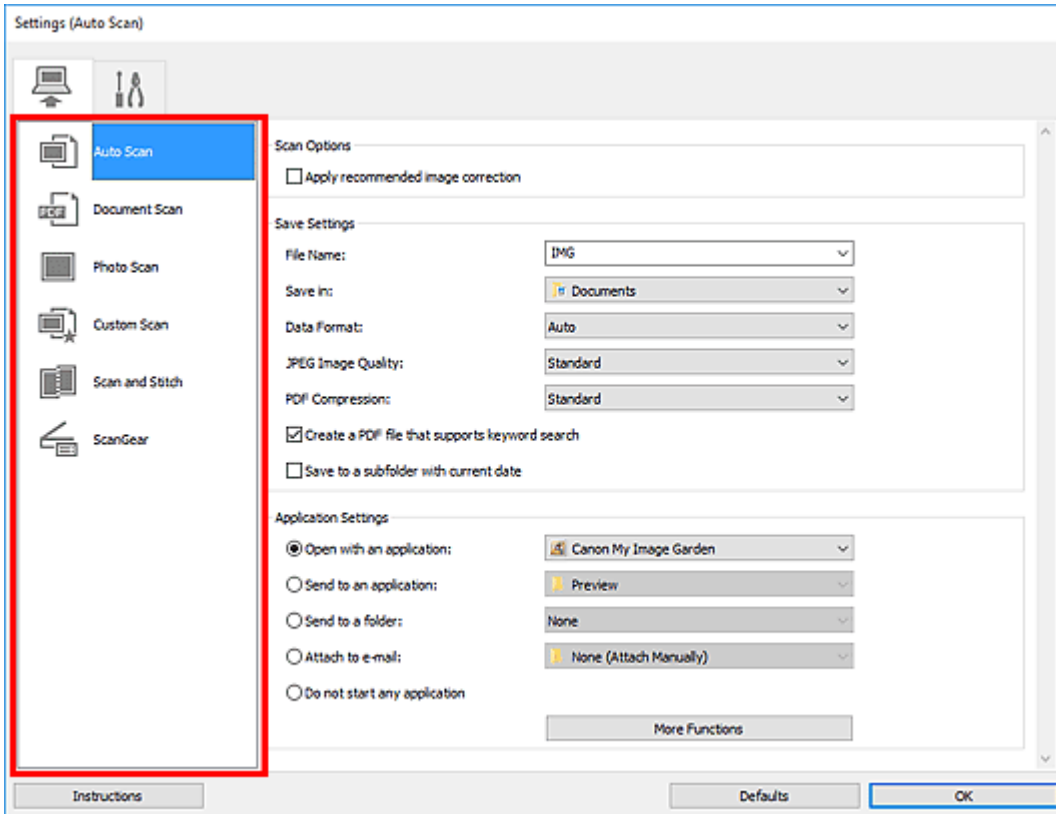
Opens this guide.

**Settings...**

Displays the [Settings dialog box](#) in which you can specify the scan/save settings and the response after scanning.

# Settings Dialog Box

The Settings dialog box has two tabs:  (Scanning from a Computer) and  (General Settings). When you click a tab, the options available in the red frame switches; set the details of each function on each tab as needed.



## (Scanning from a Computer) Tab

Set the default actions when scanning from IJ Scan Utility or My Image Garden.

- [Settings \(Auto Scan\) Dialog Box](#)
- [Settings \(Document Scan\) Dialog Box](#)
- Settings (Photo Scan) Dialog Box
- Settings (Custom Scan) Dialog Box
- Settings (Scan and Stitch) Dialog Box
- Settings (ScanGear) Dialog Box


## (General Settings) Tab

Set the model to use, file size restriction on e-mail attachment, language for detecting text in images, and the folder in which to save images temporarily.

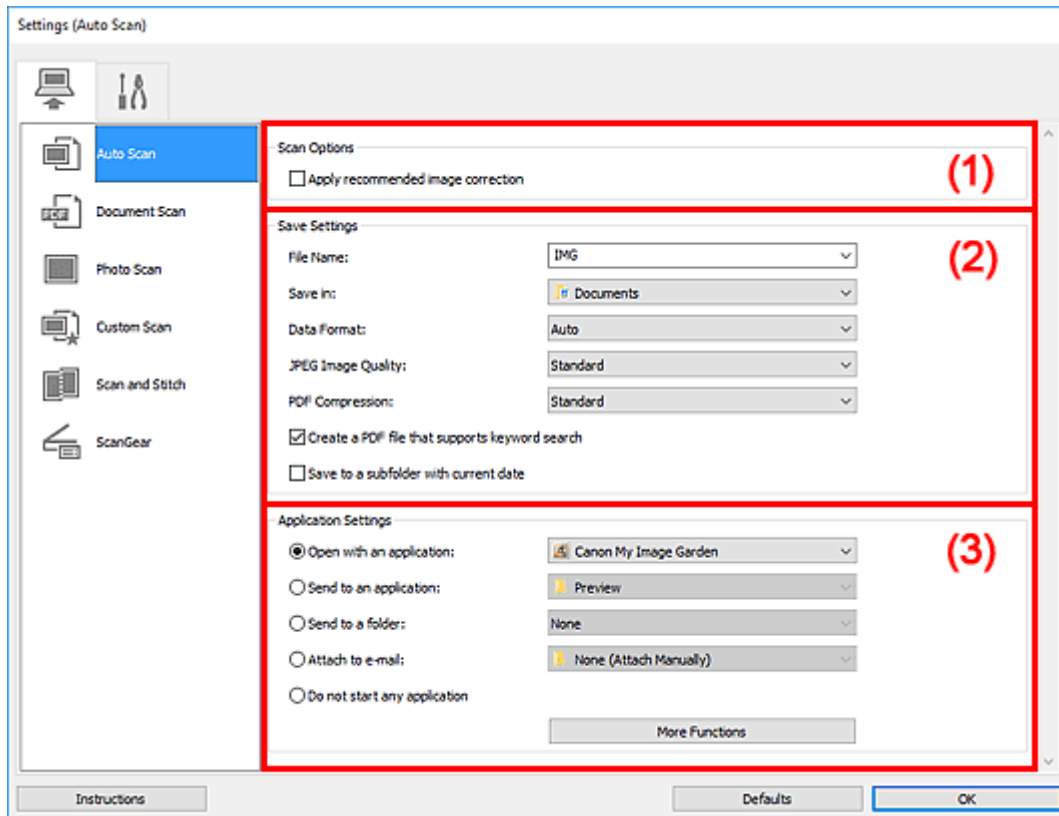
- [Settings \(General Settings\) Dialog Box](#)



## Settings (Auto Scan) Dialog Box

Click **Auto Scan** on the  (Scanning from a Computer) tab to display the **Settings (Auto Scan)** dialog box.

In the **Settings (Auto Scan)** dialog box, you can make advanced scan settings to scan by automatically detecting the item type.



- [\(1\) Scan Options Area](#)
- [\(2\) Save Settings Area](#)
- [\(3\) Application Settings Area](#)

### »»» Important

- When the Settings dialog box is displayed from My Image Garden, the setting items for **Application Settings** do not appear.

### Supported Items

Photos, postcards, business cards, magazines, newspapers, documents, and BD/DVD/CD.

### »»» Important

- To scan the following types of items, specify the item type and size in the **Settings (Document Scan)** dialog box, **Settings (Photo Scan)** dialog box, or **Settings (Custom Scan)** dialog box, then click **Photo**, **Document**, or **Custom** in the IJ Scan Utility main screen. You cannot scan correctly with **Auto**.
  - A4 size photos
  - Text documents smaller than 2L (5 inches x 7 inches) (127 mm x 178 mm), such as paperback pages with the spine cut off

- Items printed on thin white paper
- Long narrow items such as panoramic photos
- Reflective disc labels may not be scanned as expected.
- Place items to be scanned on the platen correctly. Otherwise, items may not be scanned correctly.

Refer to "[Positioning Originals \(Scanning from Computer\)](#)" for how to place items.

## »» Note

- To reduce moire in scans, set **Select Source** to **Magazine** in the **Settings (Document Scan)** dialog box or **Settings (Custom Scan)** dialog box, then click **Document** or **Custom** in the IJ Scan Utility main screen.

## (1) Scan Options Area

### Apply recommended image correction

Applies suitable corrections automatically based on the item type.

### »» Important

- The color tone may differ from the source image due to corrections. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.

### »» Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable this function.

## (2) Save Settings Area

### File Name

Enter the file name of the image to be saved. When you save a file, the date and four digits are appended to the set file name in the "\_20XX0101\_0001" format.

### »» Note

- When you select the **Save to a subfolder with current date** checkbox, the date and four digits are appended to the set file name.

### Save in

Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To add a folder, select **Add...** from the pull-down menu, then click **Add** in the displayed **Select Destination Folder** dialog box and specify the destination folder.

The default save folders are as follows.

- **Windows 10/Windows 8.1/Windows Vista:**

**Documents** folder

- **Windows 8/Windows 7:**

**My Documents** folder

### »» Important

- When the Settings dialog box is displayed from My Image Garden, this option does not appear.

## Data Format

**Auto** is selected. The following data formats are automatically applied according to the item type when saving.

- Photos, postcards, BD/DVD/CD, and business cards: JPEG
- Magazines, newspapers, and documents: PDF

### ►►► Important

- The save format may differ depending on how you place the item.

■ [Positioning Originals \(Scanning from Computer\)](#)

## JPEG Image Quality

You can specify the image quality of JPEG files.

## PDF Compression

Select the compression type for saving PDF files.

### Standard

It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

### High

Compresses the file size when saving, allowing you to reduce the load on your network/server.

## Create a PDF file that supports keyword search

Select this checkbox to convert text in images into text data and create PDF files that support keyword search.

### ►►► Note

- PDF files that are searchable in the language selected in **Document Language** on the (General Settings) tab of the Settings dialog box are created.



## Save to a subfolder with current date

Select this checkbox to create a current date folder in the folder specified in **Save in** and save scanned images in it. The folder will be created with a name such as "20XX\_01\_01" (Year\_Month\_Date).

If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in **Save in**.

## (3) Application Settings Area

### Open with an application

Select this when you want to enhance or correct the scanned images.

You can specify the application from the pull-down menu.

### Send to an application

Select this when you want to use the scanned images as they are in an application that allows you to browse or organize images.

You can specify the application from the pull-down menu.

**Send to a folder**

Select this when you also want to save the scanned images to a folder other than the one specified in **Save in**.

You can specify the folder from the pull-down menu.

**Attach to e-mail**

Select this when you want to send e-mails with the scanned images attached.

You can specify the e-mail client you want to start from the pull-down menu.

**Do not start any application**

Saves to the folder specified in **Save in**.

**»» Note**

- To add an application or folder to the pull-down menu, select **Add...** from the pull-down menu, then click **Add** in the displayed **Select Application** or **Select Destination Folder** dialog box and specify the application or folder.


**Instructions**

Opens this guide.

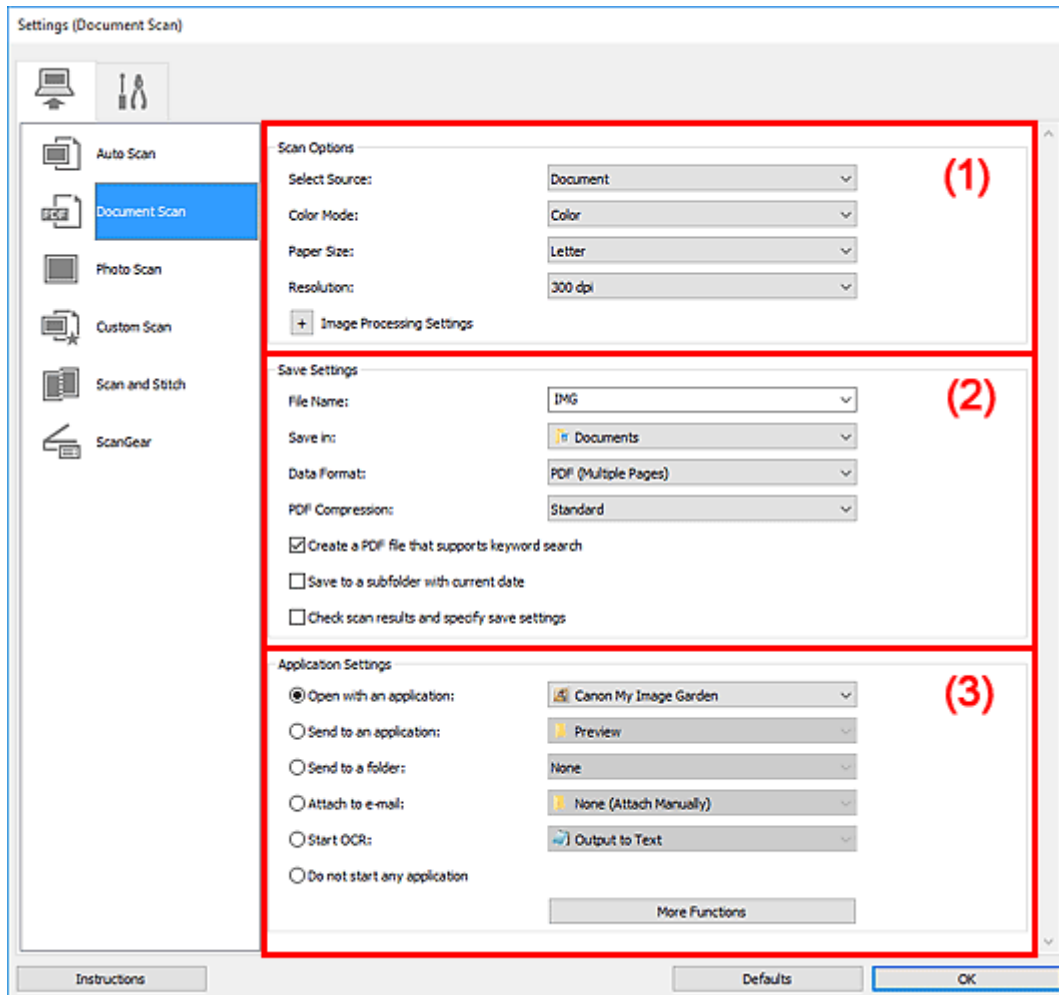
**Defaults**

You can restore the settings in the displayed screen to the default settings.

# Settings (Document Scan) Dialog Box

Click **Document Scan** on the  (Scanning from a Computer) tab to display the **Settings (Document Scan)** dialog box.

In the **Settings (Document Scan)** dialog box, you can make advanced scan settings to scan items as documents.



- [\(1\) Scan Options Area](#)
- [\(2\) Save Settings Area](#)
- [\(3\) Application Settings Area](#)

## ▶▶▶ Important

- When the Settings dialog box is displayed from the Scan screen of My Image Garden, the setting items for **Application Settings** do not appear.

## (1) Scan Options Area

### Select Source

Select the type of item to be scanned.

- Scanning documents: **Document**
- Scanning magazines: **Magazine**

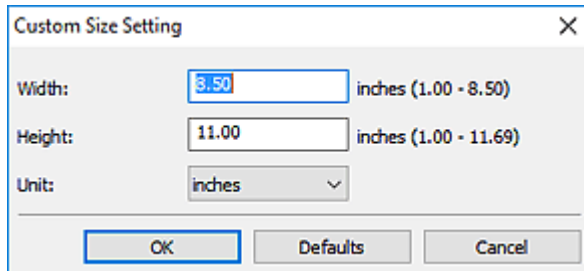
## Color Mode

Select the color mode in which to scan the item.

## Paper Size

Select the size of the item to be scanned.

When you select **Custom**, a screen in which you can specify the paper size appears. Select a **Unit**, then enter the **Width** and **Height**, and then click **OK**.



### »»» Note

- Click **Defaults** to restore the specified settings to the default settings.

## Resolution

Select the resolution of the item to be scanned.


The higher the resolution (value), the more detail in your image.

- Resolution

### »»» Note

- Only **300 dpi** or **400 dpi** can be set when **Start OCR** is selected in **Application Settings**.

## Image Processing Settings

Click  (Plus) to set the following.

### »»» Note

- When **Color Mode** is **Black and White**, only **Reduce gutter shadow**, **Correct slanted text document**, and **Detect the orientation of text document and rotate image** appear.

## Apply Auto Document Fix

Select this checkbox to sharpen text in a document or magazine for better readability.

### »»» Important

- The color tone may differ from the source image due to corrections. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.

### »»» Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable this function.

## Sharpen outline

Emphasizes the outline of the subjects to sharpen the image.

## Reduce show-through

Sharpens text in an item or reduces show-through in newspapers, etc.

### Reduce moire

Reduces moire patterns.

Printed materials are displayed as a collection of fine dots. "Moire" is a phenomenon where uneven gradation or a stripe pattern appears when such photos or pictures printed with fine dots are scanned.

#### ▶▶▶ Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable **Reduce moire**.

### Reduce gutter shadow

Reduces gutter shadows that appear between pages when scanning open booklets.

#### ▶▶▶ Note

- Use ScanGear (scanner driver)'s **Advanced Mode** tab to correct gutter shadows when scanning non-standard size items or specified areas.  
Refer to "Gutter Shadow Correction" for your model from Home of the Online Manual for details.
- When you enable this function, scanning may take longer than usual with network connection.

### Correct slanted text document

Detects the scanned text and corrects the angle (within -0.1 to -10 degrees or +0.1 to +10 degrees) of the document.

#### ▶▶▶ Important

- The following types of documents may not be corrected properly since the text cannot be detected correctly.
  - Documents in which the text lines are inclined more than 10 degrees or the angles vary by line
  - Documents containing both vertical and horizontal text
  - Documents with extremely large or small fonts
  - Documents with small amount of text
  - Documents containing figures/images
  - Hand-written text
  - Documents containing both vertical and horizontal lines (tables)

#### ▶▶▶ Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable **Correct slanted text document**.

### Detect the orientation of text document and rotate image

Automatically rotates the image to the correct orientation by detecting the orientation of text in the scanned document.

#### ▶▶▶ Important

- Only text documents written in the language selected from **Document Language** in the [Settings \(General Settings\) dialog box](#) are supported.
- The orientation may not be detected for the following types of settings or documents since the text cannot be detected correctly.

- Resolution is outside the range of 300 dpi to 600 dpi
- Font size is outside the range of 8 points to 48 points
- Documents containing special fonts, effects, italics, or hand-written text
- Documents with patterned backgrounds

In that case, select the **Check scan results and specify save settings** checkbox, and then rotate the image in the Save Settings dialog box.

## (2) Save Settings Area

### File Name

Enter the file name of the image to be saved. When you save a file, the date and four digits are appended to the set file name in the "\_20XX0101\_0001" format.

#### ▶▶▶ Note

- When you select the **Save to a subfolder with current date** checkbox, the date and four digits are appended to the set file name.

### Save in

Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To add a folder, select **Add...** from the pull-down menu, then click **Add** in the displayed **Select Destination Folder** dialog box and specify the destination folder.

The default save folders are as follows.

- **Windows 10/Windows 8.1/Windows Vista:**  
**Documents** folder
- **Windows 8/Windows 7:**  
**My Documents** folder

#### ▶▶▶ Important

- When the Settings dialog box is displayed from My Image Garden, this option does not appear.

### Data Format

Select the data format in which to save the scanned images.

You can select **JPEG/Exif**, **TIFF**, **PNG**, **PDF**, or **PDF (Multiple Pages)**.

#### ▶▶▶ Important

- You cannot select **JPEG/Exif** when **Color Mode** is **Black and White**.
- When **Start OCR** is selected in **Application Settings**, you cannot select **PDF** or **PDF (Multiple Pages)**.

#### ▶▶▶ Note

- With network connection, scanning may take longer than usual when you set **TIFF** or **PNG** in **Data Format**.

### PDF Compression

Select the compression type for saving PDF files.



### Standard

It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

### High

Compresses the file size when saving, allowing you to reduce the load on your network/server.

### »»» Important

- This appears only when **PDF** or **PDF (Multiple Pages)** is selected in **Data Format**.
- When **Black and White** is selected in **Color Mode**, this option does not appear.

### JPEG Image Quality

You can specify the image quality of JPEG files.

### »»» Important

- This appears only when **JPEG/Exif** is selected in **Data Format**.

### Create a PDF file that supports keyword search

Select this checkbox to convert text in images into text data and create PDF files that support keyword search.

### »»» Important

- This appears only when **PDF** or **PDF (Multiple Pages)** is selected in **Data Format**.

### »»» Note

- If text cannot be searched correctly, we recommend that you select 300 dpi or higher for **Resolution**.
- PDF files that are searchable in the language selected in **Document Language** on the (General Settings) tab of the Settings dialog box are created.



### Save to a subfolder with current date

Select this checkbox to create a current date folder in the folder specified in **Save in** and save scanned images in it. The folder will be created with a name such as "20XX\_01\_01" (Year\_Month\_Date).

If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in **Save in**.

### Check scan results and specify save settings

Displays the Save Settings dialog box after scanning.

### »»» Important

- When the Settings dialog box is displayed from My Image Garden, this option does not appear.

## (3) Application Settings Area

### Open with an application

Select this when you want to enhance or correct the scanned images.

You can specify the application from the pull-down menu.

**Send to an application**

Select this when you want to use the scanned images as they are in an application that allows you to browse or organize images.

You can specify the application from the pull-down menu.

**Send to a folder**

Select this when you also want to save the scanned images to a folder other than the one specified in **Save in**.

You can specify the folder from the pull-down menu.

**Attach to e-mail**

Select this when you want to send e-mails with the scanned images attached.

You can specify the e-mail client you want to start from the pull-down menu.

**Start OCR**

Select this when you want to convert text in the scanned image into text data.

You can specify the application from the pull-down menu.

**Do not start any application**

Saves to the folder specified in **Save in**.

**»» Note**

- To add an application or folder to the pull-down menu, select **Add...** from the pull-down menu, then click **Add** in the displayed **Select Application** or **Select Destination Folder** dialog box and specify the application or folder.

**Instructions**

Opens this guide.

**Defaults**

You can restore the settings in the displayed screen to the default settings.

## Settings (General Settings) Dialog Box

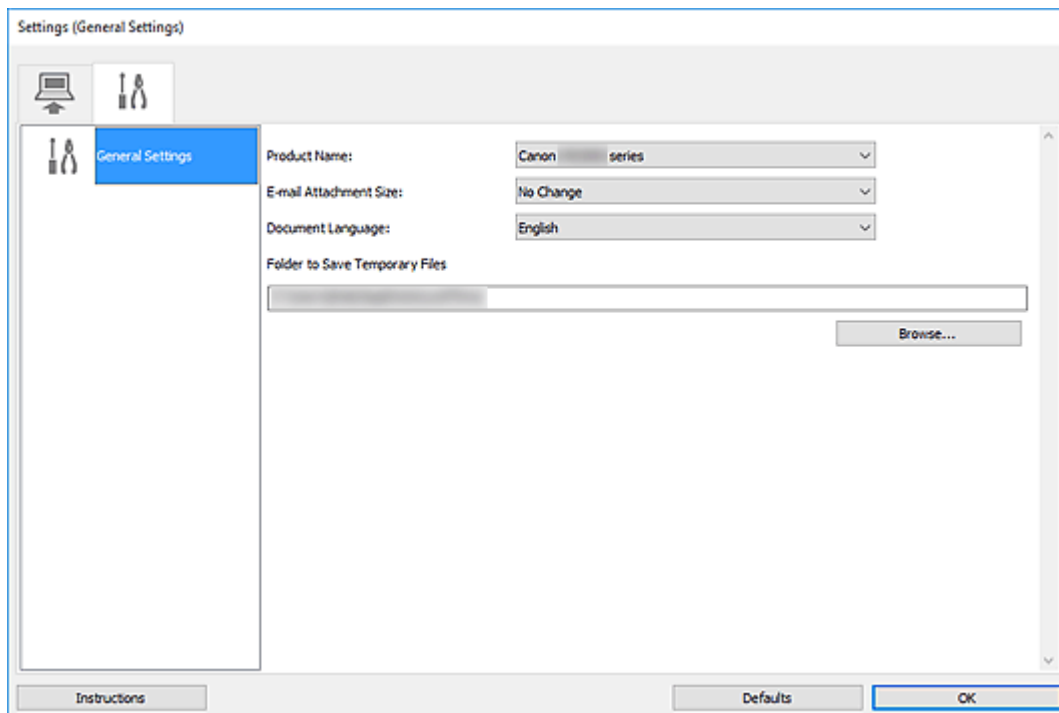


Click the  (General Settings) tab to display the **Settings (General Settings)** dialog box.

In the **Settings (General Settings)** dialog box, you can set the product to use, file size restriction on e-mail attachment, language to detect text in images, and folder in which to save images temporarily.

### ►►► Important

- When the Settings dialog box is displayed from My Image Garden, some options may not appear.



### Product Name

Displays the name of the product that IJ Scan Utility is currently set to use.

If the displayed product is not the one you want to use, select the desired product from the list.

In addition, for network connection, select one with "Network" after the product name.

### ►►► Note

- With network connection, **Select** appears on the right side of the product name. Click **Select** to display IJ Network Scanner Selector EX from which you can change the scanner to use. Refer to ["Network Scan Settings"](#) for the setting procedure.

### E-mail Attachment Size

You can restrict the size of scanned images to be attached to an e-mail.

You can select **Small (Suitable for 640 x 480 Windows)**, **Medium (Suitable for 800 x 600 Windows)**, **Large (Suitable for 1024 x 768 Windows)**, or **No Change**.

### Document Language

You can select the language for detecting text in images and for use with search when a PDF file that supports keyword search is created.

**Folder to Save Temporary Files**

Displays the folder in which to save images temporarily. Click **Browse...** to specify the destination folder.

**Instructions**

Opens this guide.

**Defaults**

You can restore the settings in the displayed screen to the default settings.

## Scanning Using Application Software (ScanGear)

- ▶ [What Is ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)?](#)
- ▶ [Starting ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#)
- ▶ [Scanning in Basic Mode](#)
- ▶ [Scanning in Advanced Mode](#)
- ▶ [Scanning Multiple Documents from the ADF \(Auto Document Feeder\) in Advanced Mode](#)
- ▶ [Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time with ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#)
- ▶ [ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\) Screens](#)
- ▶ [Positioning Originals \(Scanning from Computer\)](#)
- ▶ [General Notes \(Scanner Driver\)](#)

### Important

- Available functions and settings vary depending on your scanner or printer.

# What Is ScanGear (Scanner Driver)?

ScanGear (scanner driver) is software required for scanning documents. Use the software to specify the output size, image corrections, and other settings.

ScanGear can be started from IJ Scan Utility or applications that are compatible with the standard TWAIN interface. (ScanGear is a TWAIN-compatible driver.)

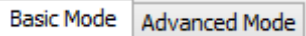
## Features

Specify the document type, output size, and other settings when scanning documents and preview scan results. Make various correction settings or finely adjust the brightness, contrast, and other parameters to scan in a specific color tone.

## Screens

There are two modes: Basic Mode and Advanced Mode.

Switch modes with the tabs on the upper right of the screen.

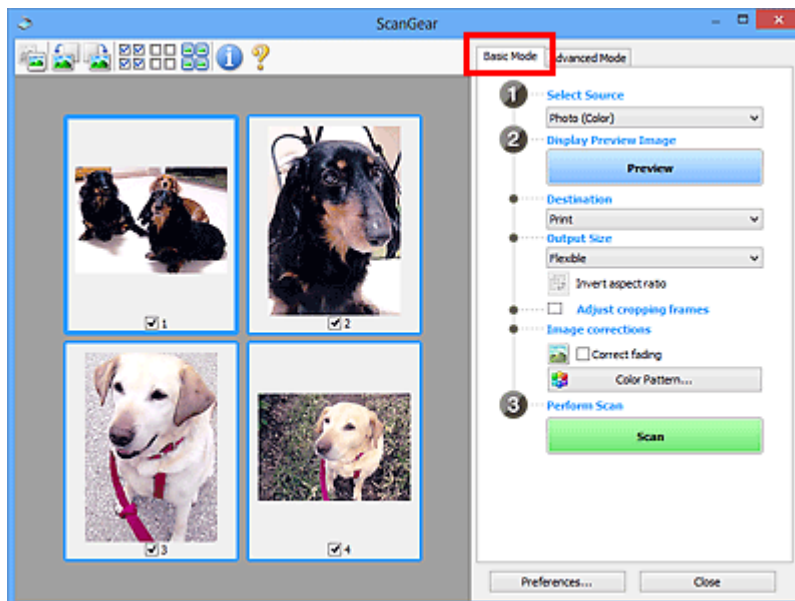


### ►►► Note

- ScanGear starts in the last used mode.
- Settings are not retained when you switch modes.

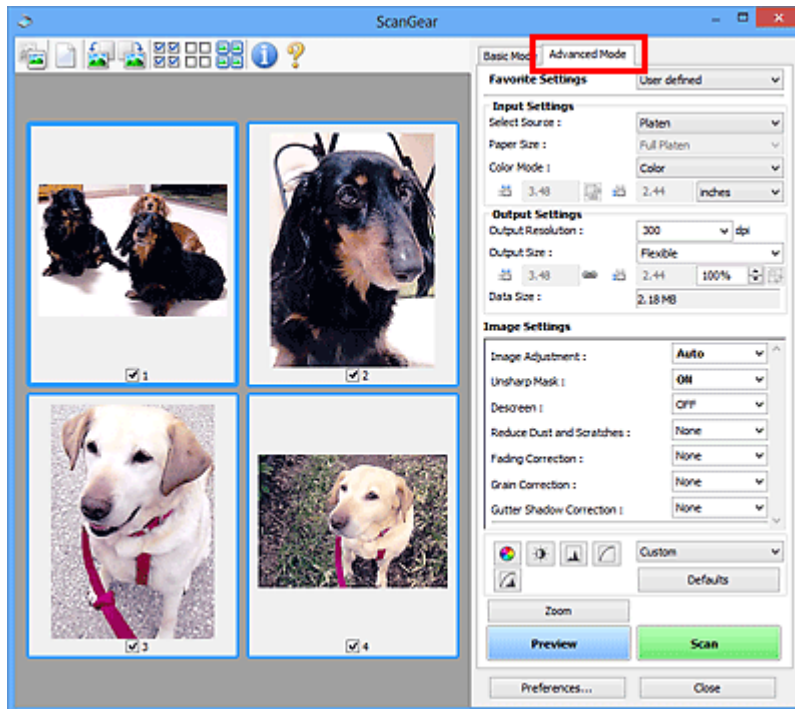
## Basic Mode

Use the **Basic Mode** tab to scan easily by following three simple on-screen steps ( **1** , **2** , and **3** ).



## Advanced Mode

Use the **Advanced Mode** tab to scan by specifying the color mode, output resolution, image brightness, color tone, and other settings.



## Starting ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

Use ScanGear (scanner driver) to make image corrections and color adjustments when scanning. Start ScanGear from IJ Scan Utility or other applications.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- If you have more than one scanner or have a network compatible model and changed the connection from USB connection to network connection, set up the network environment.

### Starting from IJ Scan Utility

1. Start IJ Scan Utility.

For details search for "Starting IJ Scan Utility" from the top page of the Online Manual for your model.

2. In IJ Scan Utility main screen, click ScanGear.

The ScanGear screen appears.

### Starting from Application

The procedure varies depending on the application. For details, see the application's manual.

1. Start application.
2. On application's menu, select machine.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- A machine connected over a network, will have "Network" displayed after the product name.

3. Scan document.

The ScanGear screen appears.




## Scanning in Basic Mode

Use the **Basic Mode** tab to scan easily by following these simple on-screen steps.

To scan multiple documents at one time from the Platen, see [Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time with ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#).

When scanning from the ADF (Auto Document Feeder), preview is not available.

### ►► Important

- The following types of documents may not be scanned correctly. In that case, click  (Thumbnail) on the Toolbar to switch to whole image view and scan.
  - Photos with a whitish background
  - Documents printed on white paper, hand-written text, business cards, and other unclear documents
  - Thin documents
  - Thick documents
- The following types of documents cannot be scanned correctly.
  - Documents smaller than 1.2 inches (3 cm) square
  - Photos that have been cut to irregular shapes

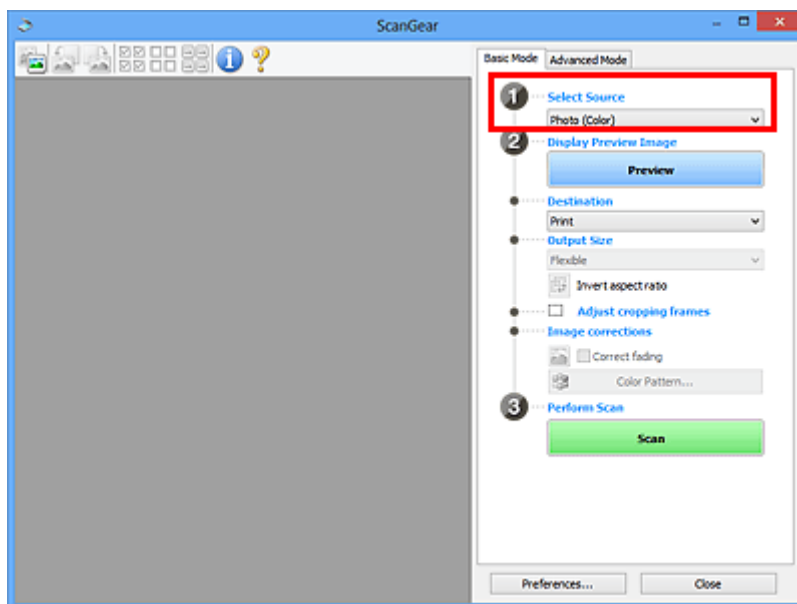
### ►► Note

- Both sides of a two sided document can be scanned simultaneously on models with ADF duplex scanning support.

1. Place document on machine's Platen or ADF, and then start ScanGear (scanner driver).

- [Positioning Originals \(Scanning from Computer\)](#)
- [Starting ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#)

2. Set **Select Source** to match your document.



### ►►► Important

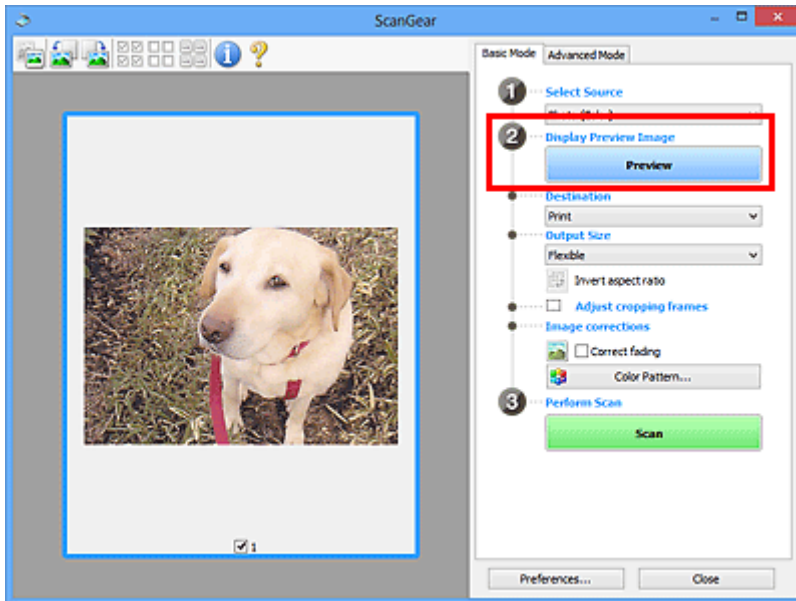
- Some applications do not support continuous scanning from the ADF. For details, see the application's manual.

### ►►► Note

- To scan magazines containing many color photos, select **Magazine (Color)**.

### 3. Click **Preview**.

Preview image appears in the Preview area.



### ►►► Important

- **Preview** is not available when scanning from the ADF.

### ►►► Note

- Colors are adjusted based on the document type selected in **Select Source**.

### 4. Set **Destination**.

### ►►► Note

- Skip ahead to Step 7 if an ADF option is selected in **Select Source**.

### 5. Set **Output Size**.

Output size options vary with the selected **Destination**.

### 6. Adjust cropping frames (scan areas) as needed.

Adjust the size and position of the cropping frames on the preview image.


- Adjusting Cropping Frames (ScanGear)

7. Set **Image corrections** as needed.

8. Click **Scan**.

Scanning starts.

#### ▶▶▶ **Note**

- Click  (Information) to display a dialog box showing the document type and other details of the current scan settings.
- How ScanGear behaves after scanning is complete can be set from **Status of ScanGear dialog after scanning** on the Scan tab of the **Preferences** dialog box.

## Related Topic

- [Basic Mode Tab](#)

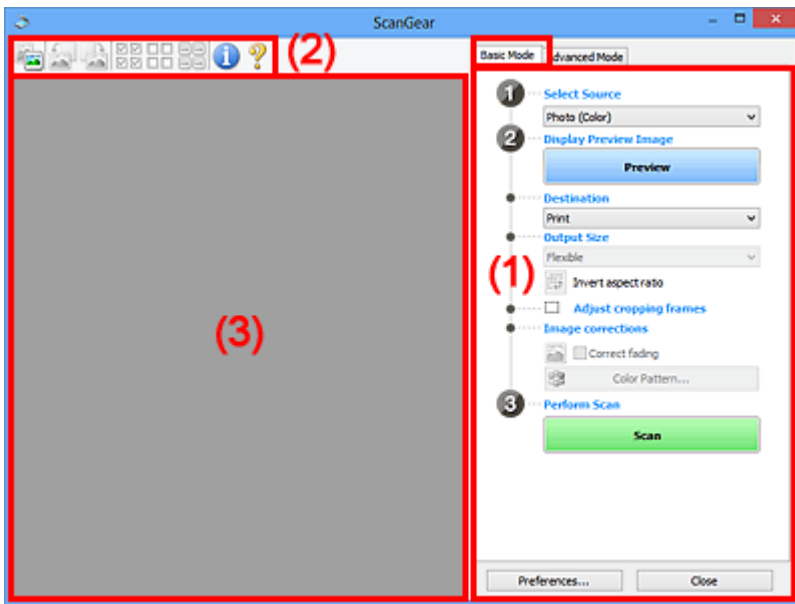
## ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screens

- ▶ **Basic Mode Tab**
- ▶ **Advanced Mode Tab**

# Basic Mode Tab

Use the **Basic Mode** tab to scan easily by following these simple on-screen steps.

This section describes the settings and functions available on the **Basic Mode** tab.



- [\(1\) Settings and Operation Buttons](#)
- [\(2\) Toolbar](#)
- [\(3\) Preview Area](#)

## ▶▶▶ Note

- The displayed items vary by document type and view.
- Preview is not available when scanning from the ADF (Auto Document Feeder).

## (1) Settings and Operation Buttons

### Select Source

#### Photo (Color)

Scan color photos.

#### Magazine (Color)

Scan color magazines.

#### Document (Color)

Scan documents in color.

#### Document (Grayscale)

Scan documents in black and white.

#### Document (Color) ADF Simplex

Scan documents from the ADF in color.

#### Document (Grayscale) ADF Simplex

Scan documents from the ADF in black and white.

#### Document (Color) ADF Duplex (only for models supporting ADF duplex scanning)

Scan both sides of documents from the ADF in color.

## Document (Grayscale) ADF Duplex (only for models supporting ADF duplex scanning)

Scan both sides of documents from the ADF in black and white.

### Important

- Some applications do not support continuous scanning from the ADF. For details, see the application's manual.

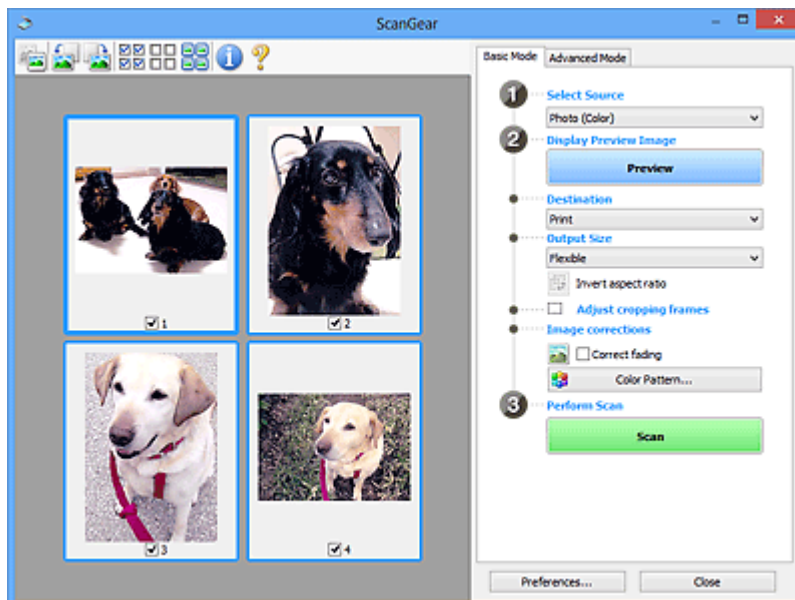
### Note

- When you select a document type, the unsharp mask function will be active.
- When you select an option other than the ADF types, the image adjustment function which adjusts images based on the document type will also be active.
- When you select **Magazine (Color)**, the descreen function will be active.

## Display Preview Image

### Preview

Performs a trial scan.



### Note

- When using the machine for the first time, scanner calibration starts automatically. Wait a while until the preview image appears.

## Destination

Select what you want to do with the scanned image.

### Print

Select this to print the scanned image on a printer.

### Image display

Select this to view the scanned image on a monitor.

### OCR

Select this to use the scanned image with OCR software.

"OCR software" is software that converts text scanned as an image into text data that can be edited in word processors and other programs.

## Output Size

Select an output size.

Output size options vary by the item selected in **Destination**.

### Flexible

Adjust the cropping frames (scan areas) freely.

#### In thumbnail view:

Drag the mouse over a thumbnail to display a cropping frame. When a cropping frame is displayed, the portion within the cropping frame will be scanned. When no cropping frame is displayed, each frame is scanned individually.

#### In whole image view:

When no cropping frame is displayed, the entire Preview area will be scanned. When a cropping frame is displayed, the portion within the cropping frame will be scanned.

### Paper Size (such as L or A4)

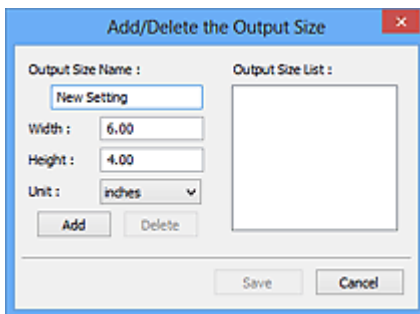
Select an output paper size. The portion within the cropping frame will be scanned at the size of the selected paper size. Drag the cropping frame to enlarge/reduce it while maintaining the aspect ratio.

### Monitor Size (such as 1024 x 768 pixels)

Select an output size in pixels. A cropping frame of the selected monitor size will appear and the portion within the cropping frame will be scanned. Drag the cropping frame to enlarge/reduce it while maintaining the aspect ratio.

### Add/Delete...

Displays the **Add/Delete the Output Size** dialog box for specifying custom output sizes. This option can be selected when **Destination** is **Print** or **Image display**.



In the **Add/Delete the Output Size** dialog box, multiple output sizes can be specified and then saved at one time. Saved items will be registered to the **Output Size** list and can be selected, along with the predefined items.

#### Adding:

Enter **Output Size Name**, **Width**, and **Height**, and then click **Add**. For **Unit**, select **inches** or **mm** if **Destination** is **Print**; if it is **Image display**, only **pixels** can be selected. The name of the added size appears in **Output Size List**. Click **Save** to save the items listed in **Output Size List**.

#### Deleting:

Select the output size you want to delete in **Output Size List**, and then click **Delete**. Click **Save** to save the items listed in **Output Size List**.

### »»» Important

- Predefined output sizes such as **A4** and **1024 x 768 pixels** cannot be deleted.

### »»» Note

- Save up to 10 items.
- An error message appears when you enter a value outside the setting range. Enter a value within the setting range.

### »»» Note

- For details on whether or how the cropping frame initially appears on a preview image, see **Cropping Frame on Previewed Images** in Preview Tab of the **Preferences** dialog box.



#### **Invert aspect ratio**

Available when **Output Size** is set to anything but **Flexible**.

Click this button to rotate the cropping frame. Click again to return it to the original orientation.

#### **Adjust cropping frames**

Adjust the scan area within the Preview area.

If an area is not specified, the document will be scanned at the document size (Auto Crop). If an area is specified, only the portion in the cropping frame will be scanned.

- Adjusting Cropping Frames (ScanGear)

#### **Image corrections**

Correct the image to be scanned.

### »»» Important

- **Apply Auto Document Fix** and **Correct fading** are available when **Recommended** is selected on the **Color Settings** tab of the **Preferences** dialog box.

### »»» Note

- Available functions vary by the document type selected in **Select Source**.

#### **Apply Auto Document Fix**

Sharpens text in a document or magazine for better readability.

### »»» Important

- Scanning may take longer than usual when this checkbox is selected.
- The color tone may change from the source image due to corrections. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.
- Correction may not be applied properly if the scan area is too small.

#### **Correct fading**

Corrects photos that have faded with time or have a colorcast.

#### **Reduce gutter shadow**

Corrects shadows that appear between pages when scanning open booklets.



## »» Important

- Be sure to see Gutter Shadow Correction for precautions and other information on using this function.

### Color Pattern...

Adjust the image's overall color. Correct colors that have faded due to colorcast or other reasons and reproduce natural colors while previewing color changes.

- Adjusting Colors Using a Color Pattern

## »» Important

- This setting is not available when **Color Matching** is selected on the **Color Settings** tab of the **Preferences** dialog box.

### Perform Scan

#### Scan

Starts scanning.

## »» Note

- When scanning starts, the progress appears. To cancel the scan, click **Cancel**.

### Preferences...

Displays the Preferences dialog box for making scan/preview settings.

### Close

Closes ScanGear (scanner driver).

## (2) Toolbar

Adjust or rotate preview images. The buttons displayed on the Toolbar vary by view.

### In thumbnail view:



### In whole image view:



Switches the view in the Preview area.

- [\(3\) Preview Area](#)



Rotates the preview image 90 degrees counter-clockwise.

- The result will be reflected in the scanned image.
- The image returns to its original state when you preview again.



#### **(Rotate Right)**

Rotates the preview image 90 degrees clockwise.

- The result will be reflected in the scanned image.
- The image returns to its original state when you preview again.



#### **(Auto Crop)**

Displays and adjusts the cropping frame automatically to the size of the document displayed in the Preview area. The scan area is reduced every time you click this button if there are croppable areas within the cropping frame.



#### **(Check All Frames)**

Available when two or more frames are displayed.

Selects the checkboxes of the images in thumbnail view.



#### **(Uncheck All Frames)**

Available when two or more frames are displayed.

Deselects the checkboxes of the images in thumbnail view.



#### **(Select All Frames)**

Available when two or more frames are displayed.

Selects the images in thumbnail view and outlines them in blue.



#### **(Select All Cropping Frames)**

Available when two or more cropping frames are specified.

Turns the cropping frames into thick broken lines and applies the settings to all of them.



#### **(Remove Cropping Frame)**

Removes the selected cropping frame.



#### **(Information)**

Displays the version of ScanGear, along with the document type and other details of the current scan settings.




#### **(Open Guide)**

Opens this page.

### **(3) Preview Area**



This is where a trial image appears after you click **Preview**. The results of image corrections, color adjustments, and other settings made in [\(1\) Settings and Operation Buttons](#) are also reflected.

When  (Thumbnail) is displayed on Toolbar:

Cropping frames are specified according to the document size, and thumbnails of scanned images appear. Only the images with the checkbox selected will be scanned.



►► Note

- When multiple images are previewed, different outlines indicate different selection status.
  - Focus Frame (thick blue outline): The displayed settings will be applied.
  - Selected Frame (thin blue outline): The settings will be applied to the Focus Frame and Selected Frames simultaneously. To select multiple images, click them while pressing the Ctrl key.
  - Unselected (no outline): The settings will not be applied.
- Double-click a frame to enlarge the image. Click   (Frame Advance) at the bottom of the screen to display the previous or next frame. Double-click the enlarged frame again to return it to its original state.

When  (Whole Image) is displayed on Toolbar:

Items on the Platen are scanned and appear as a single image. All portions in the cropping frames will be scanned.



## ▶▶ Note

- Create cropping frame(s) on the displayed image. In thumbnail view, one cropping frame can be created per image. In whole image view, multiple cropping frames can be created.

- [Adjusting Cropping Frames \(ScanGear\)](#)

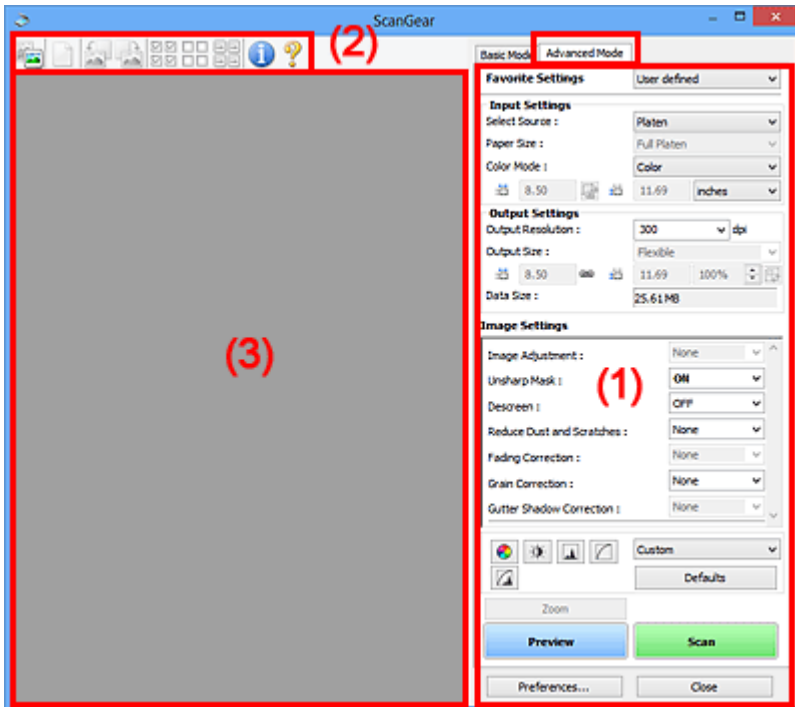
## Related Topic

- [Scanning in Basic Mode](#)

# Advanced Mode Tab

This mode allows you to make advanced scan settings such as the color mode, output resolution, image brightness, and color tone.

This section describes the settings and functions available on the **Advanced Mode** tab.



- [\(1\) Settings and Operation Buttons](#)
- [\(2\) Toolbar](#)
- [\(3\) Preview Area](#)

## ▶▶▶ Note

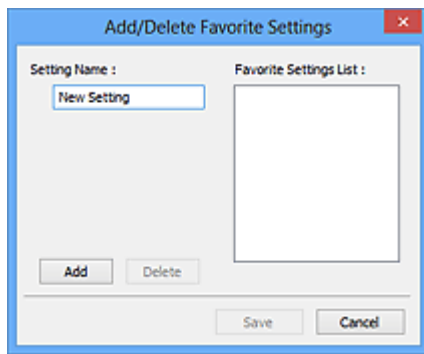
- The displayed items vary by document type and view.
- The preview function is not available when scanning from the ADF (Auto Document Feeder).

## (1) Settings and Operation Buttons

### Favorite Settings

You can name and save a group of settings (Input Settings, Output Settings, Image Settings, and Color Adjustment Buttons) on the **Advanced Mode** tab, and load it as required. It is convenient to save a group of settings if you will be using it repeatedly. You can also use this to reload the default settings.

Select **Add/Delete...** from the pull-down menu to open the **Add/Delete Favorite Settings** dialog box.



Enter **Setting Name** and click **Add**; the name appears in **Favorite Settings List**.

When you click **Save**, the item appears in the **Favorite Settings** list and can be selected, along with the predefined items.

To delete an item, select it in **Favorite Settings List** and click **Delete**. Click **Save** to save the settings displayed in **Favorite Settings List**.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- You can set **Add/Delete...** in **Favorite Settings** after preview.
- Save up to 10 items.

## Input Settings

Specify the input settings such as the document type and size.

## Output Settings

Specify the output settings such as the output resolution and size.

## Image Settings

Enable/disable various image correction functions.


## Color Adjustment Buttons

Fine corrections to the image brightness and color tones can be made including adjustments to the image's overall brightness or contrast and adjustments to its highlight and shadow values (histogram) or balance (tone curve).

## Zoom

Zooms in on a frame, or zooms in on the image in the area specified with a cropping frame (scan area). When zoomed in, **Zoom** changes to **Undo**. Click **Undo** to return the display to its non-magnified state.

### In thumbnail view:

When multiple images are displayed in thumbnail view, clicking this button zooms in on the selected frame. Click  (Frame Advance) at the bottom of the screen to display the previous or next frame.


### ▶▶▶ Note

- You can also zoom in on an image by double-clicking the frame. Double-click the enlarged frame again to return it to its original state.

### In whole image view:

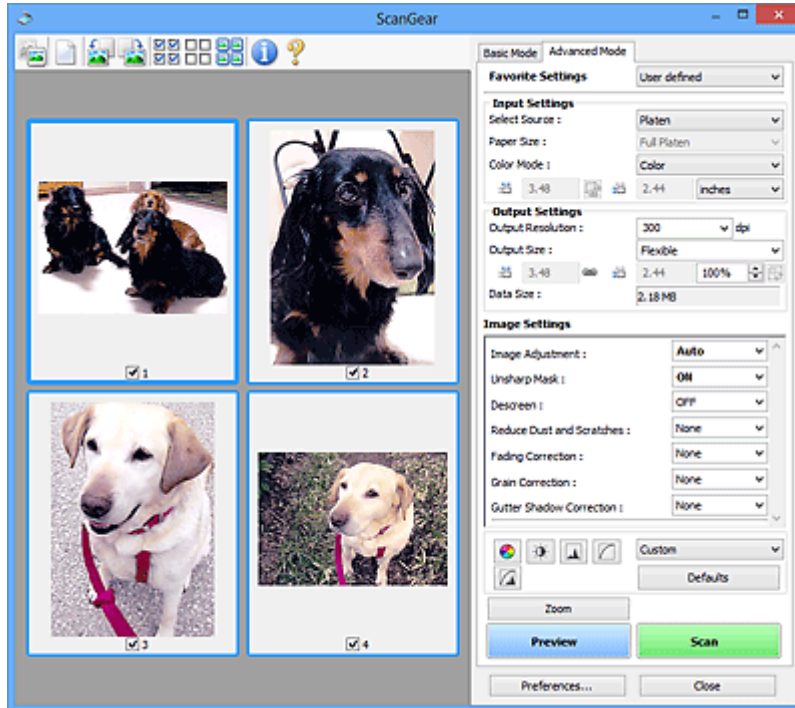
Rescans the image in the area specified with a cropping frame at higher magnification.

## ►►► Note

- **Zoom** rescans the document and displays high-resolution image in Preview.
-  (Enlarge/Reduce) on the Toolbar zooms in on the preview image quickly. However, the resolution of the displayed image will be low.

## Preview

Performs a trial scan.



## Scan

Starts scanning.

## ►►► Note

- When scanning starts, the progress appears. To cancel the scan, click **Cancel**.
- When scanning is completed, a dialog box prompting you to select the next action may appear. Follow the prompt to complete. For details, refer to **Status of ScanGear dialog after scanning** in Scan Tab (**Preferences** dialog box).
- It will take time to process the images if the total size of the scanned images exceeds a certain size. In that case, a warning message appears; it is recommended that you reduce the total size. To continue, scan in whole image view.

## Preferences...

Displays the Preferences dialog box for making scan/preview settings.

## Close

Closes ScanGear (scanner driver).

## (2) Toolbar

Adjust or rotate preview images. The buttons displayed on the Toolbar vary by view.

**In thumbnail view:**



**In whole image view:**



Switches the view in the Preview area.

■ [\(3\) Preview Area](#)



**(Clear)**

Deletes the preview image from the Preview area.

It also resets the Toolbar and color adjustment settings.



**(Crop)**

Allows you to specify the scan area by dragging the mouse.



**(Move Image)**

Allows you to drag the image until the part you want to see is displayed when an image enlarged in the Preview area does not fit in the screen. You can also move the image using the scroll bars.



**(Enlarge/Reduce)**

Allows you to zoom in on the Preview area by clicking the image. Right-click the image to zoom out.



**(Rotate Left)**

Rotates the preview image 90 degrees counter-clockwise.

- The result will be reflected in the scanned image.
- The image returns to its original state when you preview again.



**(Rotate Right)**

Rotates the preview image 90 degrees clockwise.

- The result will be reflected in the scanned image.
- The image returns to its original state when you preview again.



**(Auto Crop)**

Displays and adjusts the cropping frame automatically to the size of the document displayed in the Preview area. The scan area is reduced every time you click this button if there are croppable areas within the cropping frame.



**(Check All Frames)**

Available when two or more frames are displayed.

Selects the checkboxes of the images in thumbnail view.





#### (Uncheck All Frames)

Available when two or more frames are displayed.

Deselects the checkboxes of the images in thumbnail view.



#### (Select All Frames)

Available when two or more frames are displayed.

Selects the images in thumbnail view and outlines them in blue.



#### (Select All Cropping Frames)

Available when two or more cropping frames are specified.

Turns the cropping frames into thick broken lines and applies the settings to all of them.



#### (Remove Cropping Frame)

Removes the selected cropping frame.



#### (Information)

Displays the version of ScanGear, along with the document type and other details of the current scan settings.



#### (Open Guide)

Opens this page.

### (3) Preview Area

This is where a trial image appears after you click **Preview**. The results of image corrections, color adjustments, and other settings made in [\(1\) Settings and Operation Buttons](#) are also reflected.



When **(Thumbnail)** is displayed on Toolbar:

Cropping frames are specified according to the document size, and thumbnails of scanned images appear. Only the images with the checkbox selected will be scanned.



## ►► Note

- When multiple images are previewed, different outlines indicate different selection status.
  - Focus Frame (thick blue outline): The displayed settings will be applied.
  - Selected Frame (thin blue outline): The settings will be applied to the Focus Frame and Selected Frames simultaneously. To select multiple images, click them while pressing the Ctrl key.
  - Unselected (no outline): The settings will not be applied.



### When (Whole Image) is displayed on Toolbar:

Items on the Platen are scanned and appear as a single image. All portions in the cropping frames will be scanned.



## ►► Note

- Create cropping frame(s) on the displayed image. In thumbnail view, one cropping frame can be created per image. In whole image view, multiple cropping frames can be created.
  - Adjusting Cropping Frames (ScanGear)

## Related Topic

- Scanning in Advanced Mode
- Scanning Multiple Documents from the ADF (Auto Document Feeder) in Advanced Mode

## General Notes (Scanner Driver)

ScanGear (scanner driver) is subject to the following restrictions. Keep these points in mind when using it.

### Scanner Driver Restrictions

- When using the NTFS file system, the TWAIN data source may not be invoked. This is because the TWAIN module cannot be written to the winnt folder for security reasons. Contact the computer's administrator for help.
- Some computers (including laptops) connected to the machine may not resume correctly from standby mode. In that case, restart the computer.
- Do not connect two or more scanners or multifunction printers with scanner function to the same computer simultaneously. If multiple scanning devices are connected, you cannot scan from the operation panel of the machine and also may experience errors while accessing the devices.
- Scanning may fail if the computer has resumed from sleep or standby mode. In that case, follow these steps and scan again.
  1. Turn off the machine.
  2. Exit ScanGear, then disconnect the USB cable from the computer and reconnect it.
  3. Turn on the machine.
- ScanGear cannot be opened in multiple applications at the same time. Within an application, ScanGear cannot be opened for the second time when it is already open.
- Be sure to close the ScanGear window before closing the application.
- When using a network compatible model by connecting to a network, the machine cannot be accessed from multiple computers at the same time.
- When using a network compatible model by connecting to a network, scanning takes longer than usual.
- Make sure that you have adequate disk space available when scanning large images at high resolutions. For example, at least 300 MB of free space is required to scan an A4 document at 600 dpi in full-color.
- ScanGear and WIA driver cannot be used at the same time.
- Do not enter the computer into sleep or hibernate state during scanning.

### Applications with Restrictions on Use

- Some applications may not display the TWAIN user interface. In that case, refer to the application's manual and change the settings accordingly.
- Some applications do not support continuous scanning of multiple documents. In some cases, only the first scanned image is accepted, or multiple images are scanned as one image. For such applications, do not scan multiple documents from the ADF (Auto Document Feeder).
- To import scanned images into Microsoft Office 2000, first save them using IJ Scan Utility, then import the saved files from the **Insert** menu.
- When scanning Platen size images into Microsoft Office 2003 (Word, Excel, PowerPoint, etc.), click **Custom Insert** in the **Insert Picture from Scanner or Camera** screen. Otherwise, images may not be scanned correctly.
- When scanning images into Microsoft Office 2007/Microsoft Office 2010 (Word, Excel, PowerPoint, etc.), use Microsoft Clip Organizer.

- Images may not be scanned correctly in some applications. In that case, increase the operating system's virtual memory and retry.
- When image size is too large (such as when scanning large images at high resolution), your computer may not respond or the progress bar may remain at 0 % depending on the application. In that case, cancel the action (for example by clicking **Cancel** on the progress bar), then increase the operating system's virtual memory or reduce the image size/resolution and retry. Alternatively, scan the image via IJ Scan Utility first, then save and import it into the application.

## Positioning Originals (Scanning from Computer)

This section describes how to load originals on the platen for scanning. If items are not placed correctly they may not be scanned correctly.

### ▶▶▶ Important

- Do not place objects on the document cover. When you open the document cover, the objects may fall into your scanner or printer, resulting in malfunction.
- Close the document cover when scanning.

## Placing Items

Place items as described below to scan by detecting the item type and size automatically.

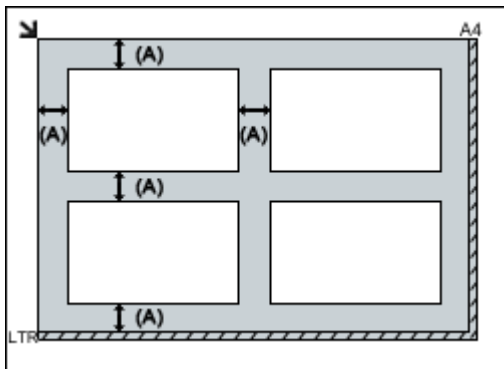
### ▶▶▶ Important

- When scanning by specifying the paper size in IJ Scan Utility or ScanGear (scanner driver), align an upper corner of the item with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the platen.
- Photos that have been cut to irregular shapes and items smaller than 1.2 inches (3 cm) square cannot be cropped accurately when scanning.
- Reflective disc labels may not be scanned as expected.

Photos, Postcards, Business Cards, and BD/DVD/CD	Magazines, Newspapers, and Documents
<div> </div> <p><b>Single item:</b></p> <p>Place the item face-down on the platen, with 0.4 inch (1 cm) or more space between the edges (diagonally striped area) of the platen and the item. Portions placed on the diagonally striped area cannot be scanned.</p> <div> </div> <p><b>▶▶▶ Important</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Large items (such as A4 size photos) that cannot be placed away from the edges/arrow (alignment mark) of the platen may be saved as PDF files. To save in a format other than PDF, scan by specifying the data format.</li> </ul>	<div> </div> <p>Place the item face-down on the platen and align an upper corner of the item with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the platen. Portions placed on the diagonally striped area cannot be scanned.</p> <div> </div> <p><b>▶▶▶ Important</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For the portions in which items cannot be scanned, see <a href="#">Loading Originals</a>.</li> </ul>

**Multiple items:**

Allow 0.4 inch (1 cm) or more space between the edges (diagonally striped area) of the platen and items, and between items. Portions placed on the diagonally striped area cannot be scanned.



(A) 0.4 inch (1 cm) or more

**Note**

- Place up to 12 items.
- Positions of slanted items (10 degrees or less) are corrected automatically.

## Network Scan Settings

You can connect your scanner or printer to a network to share it among multiple computers.

### ▶▶▶ Important

- Multiple users cannot scan at the same time.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- Complete the network settings of your scanner or printer beforehand from the Setup CD-ROM or by following the instructions on our website.
- With network connection, scanning takes longer than USB connection.

Complete the following settings to enable scanning over a network.

## Specifying Your Scanner or Printer

Use IJ Network Scanner Selector EX to specify the scanner you want to use. By specifying the scanner, you can scan over a network from your computer.



### ▶▶▶ Important

- If the product you want to use is changed with IJ Network Scanner Selector EX, the product used for scanning with IJ Scan Utility changes as well.

If your scanner or printer is not selected in IJ Scan Utility, check that it is selected with IJ Network Scanner Selector EX.

Refer to "IJ Network Scanner Selector EX2 Menu and Setting Screen" for your model from Home of the Online Manual for details.

1. Check that IJ Network Scanner Selector EX is running.

If IJ Network Scanner Selector EX is running,  (IJ Network Scanner Selector EX2) appears in the notification area on the desktop. Click  to check the hidden icons as well.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- If the icon is not displayed in the notification area on the desktop, follow the procedure below to start.

- **Windows 10:**

- From the **Start** menu, click **All apps > Canon Utilities > IJ Network Scanner Selector EX2**.

- **Windows 8.1/Windows 8:**


- Click **IJ Network Scanner Selector EX2** on the Start screen.

- If **IJ Network Scanner Selector EX2** is not displayed on the Start screen, select the **Search** charm, then search for "IJ Network Scanner Selector EX".

- **Windows 7/Windows Vista:**

From the **Start** menu, click **All Programs > Canon Utilities > IJ Network Scanner Selector EX2 > IJ Network Scanner Selector EX2**.

The icon appears in the notification area on the desktop, and the Scan-from-PC Settings screen appears. In that case, skip ahead to Step 3.

2. In the notification area on the desktop, right-click  (IJ Network Scanner Selector EX2), then select **Settings...**

The Scan-from-PC Settings screen appears.

3. Select your scanner or printer from **Scanners**.

Normally, the MAC address of your scanner or printer is already selected after the network setup. In that case, you do not need to select it again.

### **Important**


- If multiple scanners exist on the network, multiple model names appear. In that case, you can select one scanner per model.

4. Click **OK**.

## Setting for Scanning with IJ Scan Utility

To scan from IJ Scan Utility using a scanner or printer connected to a network, specify your scanner or printer with IJ Network Scanner Selector EX, then follow the steps below to change the connection status between it and the computer.

1. [Start IJ Scan Utility](#).
2. Select "Canon XXX series Network" (where "XXX" is the model name) for **Product Name**.
3. Click **Settings...** to use another scanner connected to a network.

4. Click  (General Settings), then click **Select** in **Product Name**.

The Scan-from-PC Settings screen of IJ Network Scanner Selector EX appears.

Select the scanner you want to use and click **OK**.

5. In the **Settings (General Settings)** dialog box, click **OK**.

The IJ Scan Utility main screen reappears. You can scan via a network connection.



## »» Note

- If your scanner or printer does not appear, check the following, click **OK** to close the screen, then reopen it and try selecting again.
  - MP Drivers is installed
  - Network settings of your scanner or printer is completed after installing the MP Drivers
  - Network communication between your scanner or printer and computer is enabled

If the problem is still not solved, see [Network Communication Problems](#).

# Frequently Asked Questions



Network

- [Cannot Find Printer on Network](#)
- [Cannot Find Printer while Using Wireless LAN](#)
- [Network Key Unknown](#)

For other questions about network, [click here](#).



Print

- [Printing Does Not Start](#)
- [Paper Is Blank/Printing Is Blurry/Colors Are Wrong/White Streaks Appear](#)
- [Print Results Are Unsatisfactory](#)
- [Paper Jams](#)



Installation

- [Cannot Install MP Drivers](#)



Error

- [An Error Occurs](#)
- [Message Appears](#)

---

## Examples of Problems

### Printer Does Not Move

- [Power Does Not Come On](#)
- [Power Shuts Off By Itself](#)
- [USB Connection Problems](#)
- [Cannot Communicate with Printer via USB](#)

- 
- [Printing Does Not Start](#)
  - Copying/Printing Stops
  - Printing Is Slow
  - [No Ink Comes Out](#)
  - [Paper Jams](#)
  - [Paper Does Not Feed Properly/"No Paper" Error](#)
  - [Print Results Are Unsatisfactory](#)

- 
- [Scanning Problems \(Windows\)](#)
  - Scanning Problems (Mac OS)
  - Scan Results Are Unsatisfactory (Windows)
  - Scan Results Are Unsatisfactory (Mac OS)

- 
- Cannot Print/Scan from Smartphone/Tablet

## Cannot Set Correctly (Network)

- [Cannot Find Printer on Check Printer Settings Screen](#)
  - [Cannot Find Printer while Using Wireless LAN](#)
- 

- [Printer Suddenly Cannot Be Used](#)
  - [Network Key Unknown](#)
  - Administrator Password Set for Printer Unknown
  - [Printer Cannot Be Used After Replacing Wireless Router or Changing Its Settings](#)
- 

- Message Appears on Computer During Setup
- [Checking Network Information](#)
- [Restoring to Factory Defaults](#)

## Cannot Set Correctly (Installation)

- [Cannot Install MP Drivers](#)
- Easy-WebPrint EX Does Not Start or Easy-WebPrint EX Menu Does Not Appear (Windows)
- [Updating Printer Driver in Network Environment \(Windows\)](#)

## Error or Message Appears

- [An Error Occurs](#)
  - [Message Appears](#)
- 

- [List of Support Code for Error](#)
- Error Message Appears on PictBridge (Wireless LAN) Compliant Device
- IJ Scan Utility Error Messages (Windows)
- ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Error Messages
- IJ Scan Utility Error Messages (Mac OS)
- Scanner Driver (ICA Driver) Error Messages (Mac OS)

## Operation Problems

- [Network Communication Problems](#)
- [Printing Problems](#)
- Problems while Printing/Scanning from Smartphone/Tablet
- [Scanning Problems \(Windows\)](#)
- Scanning Problems (Mac OS)
- [Mechanical Problems](#)
- [Installation and Download Problems](#)
- [Errors and Messages](#)
- If You Cannot Solve a Problem

# Network Settings and Common Problems

Here are frequently asked questions on network. Select a connection method you are using, or you want to use.



## Wireless LAN

---

### Cannot Find Printer

- [Cannot Find Printer while Using Wireless LAN](#)
- [Cannot Find Printer on Check Printer Settings Screen](#)
- [Cannot Proceed beyond Printer Connection Screen/Connect Cable Screen](#)
- Cannot Find Printer after Searching it on Printer Detection Screen During Setup
- Searching Printer by IP Address or Host Name During Setup
- Error Occurs During Wireless LAN Setup
- [Another Printer Found with Same Name](#)
- [Changing Wireless LAN Connection Method](#)

### Cannot Print or Connect

- [Printer Suddenly Cannot Be Used](#)
- [Printer Cannot Be Used After Replacing Wireless Router or Changing Its Settings](#)
- Cannot Access to Internet on Wireless LAN from Communication Device
- Connecting Printer and Wireless Router Using Easy wireless connect
- Cannot Connect Smartphone/Tablet to Wireless Router
- Error Occurs During Wireless LAN Setup
- [Connecting to Another Computer via LAN/Changing from USB to LAN Connection](#)

### LAN Setting Tips/Changing LAN Settings

- [Network Key Unknown](#)
- Administrator Password Set for Printer Unknown
- [Checking Network Information](#)
- [Restoring to Factory Defaults](#)
- Checking Wireless Router SSID/Key
- Checking Wireless Router SSID for Smartphone/Tablet
- Privacy Separator/SSID Separator/Network Separation function
- [Default Network Settings](#)
- [Connecting to Another Computer via LAN/Changing from USB to LAN Connection](#)
- [Printing Network Settings](#)
- [Changing Wireless LAN Connection Method](#)

### Printing/Scanning from Smartphone/Tablet

- Connecting Printer and Wireless Router Using Easy wireless connect
- Cannot Connect Smartphone/Tablet to Wireless Router

- [Checking Wireless Router SSID for Smartphone/Tablet](#)
- [Setting Up Using Smartphone/Tablet](#)
- [Cannot Print/Scan from Smartphone/Tablet](#)
- [Downloading Canon PRINT Inkjet/SELPHY](#)

### **Problems while Using Printer**

- [Message Appears on Computer During Setup](#)
- [Printing Is Slow](#)
- [Ink Level Not Shown on Printer Status Monitor \(Windows\)](#)
- [Packets Are Sent Constantly \(Windows\)](#)

## **Wireless Direct**

---

### **Cannot Print or Connect**

- [Printer Suddenly Cannot Be Used](#)
- [Cannot Access to Internet on Wireless LAN from Communication Device](#)

### **LAN Setting Tips/Changing LAN Settings**

- [Network Key Unknown](#)
- [Administrator Password Set for Printer Unknown](#)
- [Checking Network Information](#)
- [Restoring to Factory Defaults](#)
- [Printing Network Settings](#)
- [Default Network Settings](#)
- [Changing Wireless LAN Connection Method](#)

### **Printing/Scanning from Smartphone/Tablet**

- [Cannot Print/Scan from Smartphone/Tablet](#)
- [Downloading Canon PRINT Inkjet/SELPHY](#)


### **Problems while Using Printer**

- [Message Appears on Computer During Setup](#)
- [Printing Is Slow](#)
- [Ink Level Not Shown on Printer Status Monitor \(Windows\)](#)

# Connecting the Printer to a Network

## Available Connection Methods

The following connection methods are available on the printer.

- **Wireless Connection**   
Connect the printer and computer/smartphone/tablet using a wireless router.  
If you have a wireless router, we recommend you use one for wireless connection.



- **Wireless Direct**  
Connect the printer and computer/smartphone/tablet without using a wireless router.



For more on connection method, see Available Connection Methods.

### **▶▶ Note**

- You can connect the printer and computer using a USB cable (USB connection). Prepare a USB cable. For details, see [Connecting to Another Computer via LAN/Changing from USB to LAN Connection](#).

## Network Connection Settings/Setup

Perform connection setup for the printer and computer/smartphone/tablet.

For more on setup procedure, click [here](#).

## Changing Network Settings

See below for changing connection settings for the printer and computer/smartphone/tablet.

- To change network connection method:
  - [Changing Wireless LAN Connection Method](#)
  - Changing Connection Mode
- To add computer/smartphone/tablet to the printer:
  - [Connecting to Another Computer via LAN/Changing from USB to LAN Connection](#)
- To use Wireless Direct temporarily:
  - [Using Printer with Wireless Direct](#)

## Application Software for Network (Windows)

For Windows, you can use IJ Network Device Setup Utility to perform network settings. It allows a network/printer administrator to manage printers on network.

- Network Settings (IJ Network Device Setup Utility) (Windows)

## Troubleshooting

See [Network Settings and Common Problems](#) for troubleshooting on network connection.

## Notice/Restriction

See below for details.

- Restrictions on network settings:
  - [Restrictions](#)
- Notices when printing using web service:
  - Notice for Web Service Printing

## Restrictions

When connecting another device while a device (such as a smartphone) is already connected to the printer, connect it using the same connection method as the connected device.

If you connect using a different connection method, the connection to the device in use will be disabled.

### Connect via wireless router

- Make sure your device and the wireless router are connected. For details on checking these settings, see the manual supplied with the wireless router or contact its manufacturer.  
As for a device already connected to the printer without using a wireless router, reconnect it via a wireless router.
- Configuration, router functions, setup procedures, and security settings of network devices vary depending on the system environment. For details, see the manual for your network device or contact its manufacturer.
- This printer does not support IEEE802.11ac, IEEE802.11a, or IEEE802.11n (5 GHz). Check if your device supports IEEE802.11n (2.4 GHz), IEEE802.11g or IEEE802.11b.
- If your device is set to the "IEEE802.11n only" mode, neither WEP nor TKIP can be used as a security protocol. Change the security protocol for your device to something other than WEP and TKIP or change the setting to something other than "IEEE802.11n only."  
The connection between your device and the wireless router will be temporarily disabled while the setting is changed. Do not proceed to the next screen of this guide until setup is complete.
- For office use, consult your network administrator.
- Note that if you connect to a network with no security protection, your personal information could be disclosed to a third party.

### Wireless Direct (Access Point Mode)

#### Important

- If a device is connected to the Internet via a wireless router, and you then connect it to a printer in Wireless Direct mode, the existing connection between the device and wireless router will be disabled. In that case, the connection of the device may switch to a mobile data connection automatically depending on your device. When you connect to the Internet using a mobile data connection, charges may apply depending on your contract.
  - When you connect a device and the printer using Wireless Direct, the connection information will be saved to Wi-Fi settings. The device may be connected to the printer automatically even after disconnecting it or connecting it to another wireless router.
  - To prevent automatic connection to the printer in Wireless Direct mode, change the connection mode after using the printer, or set not to connect automatically in the Wi-Fi settings of the device.  
For details on checking or changing wireless router settings, see the router manual or contact its manufacturer.
- If you connect a device and the printer using Wireless Direct, Internet connection may become unavailable depending on your environment. In that case, web services for the printer cannot be used.



- In Wireless Direct mode, you can connect up to five devices at the same time. If you try to connect a sixth device while five devices are already connected, an error will appear.  
If an error appears, disconnect a device that does not use the printer, then configure settings again.
- Devices connected to the printer using Wireless Direct cannot communicate with each other.
- Firmware updates for the printer are not available while using Wireless Direct.
- When a device has been connected to the printer without using a wireless router and you want to set it up again using the same connection method, disconnect it first. Disable the connection between the device and printer in the Wi-Fi setting screen.

## **Network Communication Problems**

- ▶ **Cannot Find Printer on Network**
- ▶ **Network Connection Problems**
- ▶ **Other Network Problems**

## **Cannot Find Printer on Network**

### **While performing printer setup:**

- ▶ **Cannot Find Printer on Check Printer Settings Screen During Setup (Windows)**
- ▶ **Cannot Proceed beyond Printer Connection Screen/Connect Cable Screen**

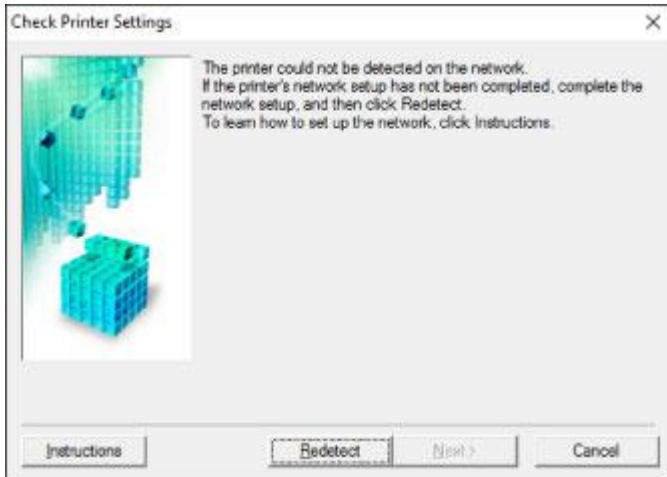
### **While using printer:**

- ▶ **Cannot Find Printer while Using Wireless LAN**

## Cannot Find Printer on Check Printer Settings Screen During Setup (Windows)

If the printer cannot be found and the **Check Printer Settings** screen appears after searching the printer by **Automatic search** on the **Search for Printers** screen, click **Redetect** and search for the printer again by the IP address on the **Search for Printers** screen.

If the printer has not been found after searching it by the IP address, check network settings.



- [Cannot Find Printer on Check Printer Settings Screen During Wireless LAN Setup \(Windows\)-  
Checking Power Status](#)
- [Cannot Find Printer on Check Printer Settings Screen During Wireless LAN Setup \(Windows\)-  
Checking PC Network Connection](#)
- [Cannot Find Printer on Check Printer Settings Screen During Wireless LAN Setup \(Windows\)-  
Checking Wireless LAN Environment](#)
- [Cannot Find Printer on Check Printer Settings Screen During Wireless LAN Setup \(Windows\)-  
Checking Security Software Settings](#)
- [Cannot Find Printer on Check Printer Settings Screen During Wireless LAN Setup \(Windows\)-  
Checking Wireless Router Settings](#)



## Cannot Find Printer on Check Printer Settings Screen During Wireless LAN Setup (Windows)-Checking Power Status

---



### **Are printer and network device (router, etc.) turned on?**

Make sure the printer is turned on.

#### ■ [Confirming that the Power Is On](#)

Make sure network device (router, etc.) is turned on.

### **If printer or network device is off:**

Turn on printer or network device.

It may take a while for the printer and network device to become ready for use once they are turned on.

Wait a while after turning on the printer or network device, and then click **Redetect** on the **Check Printer Settings** screen to redetect the printer.

If the printer is found, follow the instructions on the screen to continue to set up network communication.

### **If printer and network device are on:**

If the network devices are on, turn them off and on again.

If above does not solve the problem:

#### ■ [Cannot Find Printer on Check Printer Settings Screen During Wireless LAN Setup \(Windows\)-Checking PC Network Connection](#)



## Cannot Find Printer on Check Printer Settings Screen During Wireless LAN Setup (Windows)-Checking PC Network Connection

---



### Can you view any web pages on your computer?

Make sure the computer and network device (router, etc.) are configured and the computer is connected to the network.

### If you cannot view any web pages:

Click **Cancel** on the **Check Printer Settings** screen to cancel to set up the network communication.

After that, configure the computer and network device.

For the procedures, refer to the instruction manuals supplied with the computer and network device, or contact their manufacturers.

If you can view web pages after configuring the computer and network device, try to set up the network communication from the beginning.

If above does not solve the problem:

- [Cannot Find Printer on Check Printer Settings Screen During Wireless LAN Setup \(Windows\)-Checking Wireless LAN Environment](#)



## Cannot Find Printer on Check Printer Settings Screen During Wireless LAN Setup (Windows)-Checking Wireless LAN Environment

---



### **Check wireless router configuration and make sure the printer is not placed too far away from the wireless router.**

For more on checking the setting of the wireless router, refer to the instruction manual supplied with the wireless router or contact its manufacturer.

After checking the wireless router setting, make sure the printer is not placed far away from the wireless router.

The printer can be up to 50 m (164 ft) from the wireless router indoors. Make sure the printer is close enough to the wireless router to be used.

In addition, check where the printer and the wireless router are located and take the appropriate action.

- Check for obstructions between the printer and the wireless router.

Wireless communication between different rooms or floors is generally poor. Adjust the location of the printer and the wireless router.

- Make sure there is no source of radio wave interference near the printer or the wireless router.

If a device like a microwave oven that emits radio waves of the same frequency bandwidth as a wireless router is nearby, it may cause interference. Place the printer or the wireless router as far away from the interference source as possible.

#### **▶▶▶ Note**

- Though an antenna is attached to most wireless routers, note that some of them have it inside.

After taking measures above, click **Redetect** on the **Check Printer Settings** screen to redetect the printer.

If the printer is found, follow the instructions on the screen to continue to set up network communication.

If the printer cannot be detected, the printer is not connected to the wireless router. Connect the printer to the wireless router.

After connecting the printer to the wireless router, set up the network communication from the beginning.

If above does not solve the problem:

- [Cannot Find Printer on Check Printer Settings Screen During Wireless LAN Setup \(Windows\)-Checking Security Software Settings](#)



## Cannot Find Printer on Check Printer Settings Screen During Wireless LAN Setup (Windows)-Checking Security Software Settings



### Disable block in firewall function temporarily.

The firewall of your security software or operation system for computer may limit communication between the printer and your computer. Check the firewall setting of your security software or operation system or the message shown on your computer and disable block temporarily.

### If firewall interferes with setup:

- **If message appears:**

If a message appears warning that Canon software is attempting to access the network, set the security software to allow access.

After allowing the software to access, click **Redetect** on the **Check Printer Settings** screen to redetect the printer.

If the printer is found, follow the instructions on the screen to continue to set up network communication.

- **If no message appears:**

Cancel the setup, and then set the security software to allow Canon software to access the network.

The file **Setup.exe** or **Setup64.exe** in the **win > Driver > DrvSetup** folder on the Setup CD-ROM

After setting the security software, redo the network communication setup from the beginning.

After setup is completed, enable firewall.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- For more on firewall settings of your operating system or security software, see instruction manual or contact its manufacturer.

If above does not solve the problem:

- [Cannot Find Printer on Check Printer Settings Screen During Wireless LAN Setup \(Windows\)-Checking Wireless Router Settings](#)





## Cannot Find Printer on Check Printer Settings Screen During Wireless LAN Setup (Windows)-Checking Wireless Router Settings

---



### Check wireless router settings.

Check wireless router network connection settings, such as IP address filtering, MAC address filtering, encryption key, and DHCP function.

Make sure the same radio channel is assigned to the wireless router and the printer.

To check the settings of the wireless router, see the instruction manual supplied with the wireless router or contact the manufacturer.

In addition, make sure the wireless router you are using is configured to use 2.4 GHz bandwidth.

### ►► Important

- Depending on the wireless router, note that different SSID is assigned for a bandwidth (2.4 GHz or 5 GHz) or its usage (for PC or game machine) using alphanumeric characters at the end of SSID.

After checking the wireless router settings, click **Redetect** on the **Check Printer Settings** screen to redetect the printer.

If the printer is found, follow the instructions on the screen to continue to set up network communication.



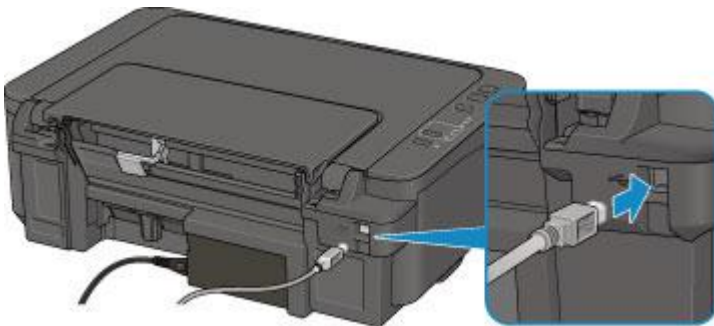
## Cannot Proceed beyond Printer Connection Screen/Connect Cable Screen



If you cannot proceed beyond the **Printer Connection** screen or the **Connect Cable** screen, check the following.

**Check1** Make sure USB cable is securely plugged in to printer and computer.

Connect the printer and the computer using a USB cable as the illustration below. The USB port is located at the back of the printer.




Check the items below only if you cannot proceed beyond the **Printer Connection** screen.

**Check2** Follow procedure below to connect printer and computer again.

### ▶▶▶ Important

- For Mac OS, make sure the lock icon is on the lower left of the **Printers & Scanners** screen (**Print & Scan** screen in Mac OS X v10.8).

If the  icon (locked) is displayed, click the icon to unlock. (The administrator name and the password are necessary to unlock.)

1. Turn off printer.
2. Unplug USB cable from printer and computer and connect it again.
3. Turn on printer.

**Check3** If you cannot resolve problem, follow procedure below to reinstall MP Drivers.

- For Windows:
  1. Click **Cancel**.
    - If the **Installation Failure** screen appears:
      1. Click **Start Over**.
      2. Click **Exit** on **Start Setup** screen and finish setup.

- If the **Connection failed.** screen appears:
  1. Click **Next**.
  2. Click **Next** on displayed screen.
  3. Click **Back to Top** on **Select Printer** screen.
  4. Click **Exit** on **Start Setup** screen and finish setup.
- 3. Turn off printer.
- 4. Restart computer.
- 5. Make sure you have no application software running.
- 6. Redo setup according to instructions on Canon website.

**»» Note**

- You can use the Setup CD-ROM to redo setup.

- For Mac OS:
  1. Click **Next**.
    - If the **Installation Failure** screen appears, click **Exit** on displayed screen and finish setup.
    - If the **Connection failed.** screen appears:
      1. Click **Next**.
      2. Click **Next** on displayed screen.
      3. Click **Back to Top** on **Select Printer** screen.
      4. Click **Exit** on **Start Setup** screen and finish setup.
  3. Turn off printer.
  4. Restart computer.
  5. Make sure you have no application software running.
  6. Redo setup according to instructions on Canon website.



## Cannot Find Printer while Using Wireless LAN

### ▶▶▶ Note

- This section describes the troubleshooting when using the computer.  
For the troubleshooting when using the smartphone or the tablet:
  - Cannot Print/Scan from Smartphone/Tablet



**Check1** Check the power status of printer and other devices (wireless router, PC, smartphone, or tablet).

Turn on the printer or devices.

If the power is already turned on, turn it off and on again.

**Check2** Make sure **Wi-Fi** lamp is lit on operation panel.

If the **Wi-Fi** lamp is off, the wireless LAN is disabled. Follow the procedure below to enable the wireless LAN.

1. Press and hold **Wi-Fi** button and release it when **Wi-Fi** lamp flashes.
2. Press **Black** button.
3. Press the **Wi-Fi** button repeatedly until the **Network** lamp lights.
4. Press **Color** button or **Black** button to finalize selection.

**Check3** Make sure printer setup is complete.

If it is not, perform setup.

- For Windows:  
Use the Setup CD-ROM or follow the instructions on the Canon website.
- For Mac OS:  
Follow the instructions on the Canon website.

**Check4** If you can use IJ Network Device Setup Utility, look for printer again. (Windows)

- IJ Network Device Setup Utility Screen

**Check5** Make sure printer and wireless router network settings match.

Make sure the network settings of the printer (e.g. wireless router name, SSID, network key, etc.) are identical with those of the wireless router.

To check the settings of the wireless router, refer to the instruction manual provided with it or contact its manufacturer.

To check the current network settings of the printer, print out the network setting information.

■ [Printing Network Settings](#)

▶▶▶ **Note**

- For Windows, you can use IJ Network Device Setup Utility to change printer's settings according to those of wireless router.

**Check6** Make sure the printer is not placed too far away from the wireless router.

Place the wireless router and printer where there are no obstacles between them. Wireless communication between different rooms or floors is generally poor. Wireless communication can be impeded by building materials containing metal or concrete. If the printer cannot communicate with the computer over a wireless LAN due to a wall, place the printer and the computer in the same room.

In addition, if a device like a microwave oven that emits radio waves of the same frequency bandwidth as a wireless router is nearby, it may cause interference. Place the wireless router as far away from interference sources as possible.

▶▶▶ **Note**

- Though an antenna is attached to most wireless routers, note that some of them have it inside.

**Check7** Make sure wireless signal is strong. Monitor signal strength and move printer and wireless router as necessary.

To check the signal strength:

■ [Checking Wireless Network Status](#)

**Check8** Make sure the computer is connected to the wireless router.

For more on how to check the computer settings or connection status, see your computer instruction manual or contact its manufacturer.

**Check9** Make sure **Enable bidirectional support** is selected in the **Ports** sheet of the properties dialog box of the printer driver. (Windows)

**Check10** Make sure security software's firewall is off.

If your security software's firewall is on, a message may appear warning you that Canon software is attempting to access the network. If this warning message appears, set security software to always allow access.

If you are using any programs that switch between network environments, check their settings. Some programs use a firewall by default.

**Check11** If printer is connected to an AirPort Base Station via LAN, use alphanumeric characters for network identifier (SSID). (Mac OS)

**Check12** Check printer's TCP/IP setting and disable IPv6.

To check the current TCP/IP setting, print out the network setting information using the operation panel.

■ [Printing Network Settings](#)

If "TCP/IPv6" is set to "Enable", both IPv4 and IPv6 are enabled.

Press and hold **Stop** button and release it when **Alarm** lamp flashes 23 times.

IPv6 is disabled and only IPv4 is enabled.

**If the problem is not resolved, redo setup.**

- For Windows:

Use the Setup CD-ROM or follow the instructions on the Canon website.

- For Mac OS:

Follow the instructions on the Canon website.

## **Network Connection Problems**

- ▶ **Printer Suddenly Cannot Be Used**
- ▶ **Network Key Unknown**
- ▶ **Printer Cannot Be Used After Replacing Wireless Router or Changing Its Settings**

# Printer Suddenly Cannot Be Used

- [Cannot Communicate with Printer Following Network Settings Change](#)
- [Cannot Communicate with Printer via Wireless LAN](#)
- [Cannot Communicate with Printer Using Wireless Direct](#)
- [Cannot Print or Scan from a Computer Connected to the Network](#)



## Cannot Communicate with Printer Following Network Settings Change

---



It may take a while for the computer to obtain an IP address, or you may need to restart your computer. Make sure the computer has obtained a valid IP address, and try again to find the printer.



## Cannot Communicate with Printer via Wireless LAN

---



**Check1** Check the power status of printer, network devices (e.g. wireless router), and smartphone/tablet.

Turn on the printer or devices.

If the power is already turned on, turn it off and on again.

It may be necessary to resolve wireless router problems (e.g. update interval of a key, problems of DHCP update interval, energy saving mode, etc.) or to update the wireless router firmware.

For details, contact the manufacturer of your wireless router.

**Check2** Can you view any web pages on your computer?

Make sure your computer is connected to the wireless router properly.

For more on checking computer settings or connection status, see the instruction manual supplied with the wireless router or contact the manufacturer.

**Check3** Make sure the printer and wireless router network settings match.

Make sure the network settings of the printer (e.g. wireless router name, SSID, network key, etc.) are identical with those of the wireless router.

To check the settings of the wireless router, refer to the instruction manual provided with it or contact its manufacturer.

To check the current network settings of the printer, print out the network setting information.

■ [Printing Network Settings](#)

If the printer network settings do not match with those of the wireless router, change the network settings of the printer to match with those of the wireless router.



## ■ Network Settings (IJ Network Device Setup Utility) (Windows)

### Check4 Make sure the printer is not placed too far away from the wireless router.

Place the wireless router and printer where there are no obstacles between them. Wireless communication between different rooms or floors is generally poor. Wireless communication can be impeded by building materials containing metal or concrete. If the printer cannot communicate with the computer over a wireless LAN due to a wall, place the printer and the computer in the same room.

In addition, if a device like a microwave oven that emits radio waves of the same frequency bandwidth as a wireless router is nearby, it may cause interference. Place the wireless router as far away from interference sources as possible.

### ▶▶ Note

- Though an antenna is attached to most wireless routers, note that some of them have it inside.

### Check5 Make sure wireless signal is strong. Monitor signal status and move printer and wireless router as necessary. (Windows)

#### ■ Checking Wireless Network Status

### Check6 Make sure you are using a valid channel.

Usable wireless channels may be limited depending on wireless network device used by your computer. See the instruction manual provided with your computer or wireless network device to check usable wireless channels.

### Check7 Make sure channel set on wireless router is a usable channel as confirmed in Check 6.

If it is not, change the channel set on the wireless router.

### Check8 Make sure security software's firewall is off.

If your security software's firewall is on, a message may appear warning you that Canon software is attempting to access the network. If this warning message appears, set security software to always allow access.

If you are using any programs that switch between network environments, check their settings. Some programs use a firewall by default.

### Check9 If printer is connected to an AirPort Base Station via LAN, use alphanumeric characters for network identifier (SSID). (Mac OS)

#### **If the problem is not resolved, redo setup.**

- For Windows:
  - Use the Setup CD-ROM or follow the instructions on the Canon website.
- For Mac OS:
  - Follow the instructions on the Canon website.

- **Positioning:**

Make sure there are no obstacles between the wireless router and the printer.

## **Cannot Communicate with Printer Using Wireless Direct**

---

### **A**

#### **Check1** Check the power status of printer and other devices (smartphone or tablet).

Turn on the printer or devices.

If the power is already turned on, turn it off and on again.

#### **Check2** Is Wireless Direct enabled?

Make sure the **Wi-Fi** lamp is lit.

Enable Wireless Direct following the procedure below.

1. Press and hold **Wi-Fi** button and release it when **Wi-Fi** lamp flashes.
2. Press **Black** button.
3. Press **Wi-Fi** button to select a wireless connection method.

When pressing the **Wi-Fi** button once: the **Wi-Fi** lamp and the **Network** lamp light up, and then the wireless LAN and the Wireless Direct are enabled.

When pressing the **Wi-Fi** button 3 times: only the **Network** lamp lights up, and then only the Wireless Direct is enabled.

4. Press **Color** button or **Black** button to finalize selection.

#### **Check3** Check the settings of your device (smartphone/tablet).

Make sure wireless LAN is enabled on your device.

For details, refer to your device's instruction manual.

#### **Check4** Make sure printer is selected as connection for device (e.g. smartphone or tablet).

Select the identifier for Wireless Direct (SSID) specified for the printer as the connection destination for devices.

Check the destination on your device.

For details, refer to your device's instruction manual or visit the manufacturer's website.

To check the identifier for Wireless Direct (SSID) specified for the printer, print out the network setting information of the printer.

 [Printing Network Settings](#)

#### **Check5** Have you entered the proper password specified for the Wireless Direct?

To check the password specified for the printer, print out the network setting information of the printer.

## ■ [Printing Network Settings](#)

### Check6 Make sure the printer is not placed too far away from the device.

Place the device and printer where there are no obstacles between them. Wireless communication between different rooms or floors is generally poor. Wireless communication can be impeded by building materials containing metal or concrete. If the printer cannot communicate with the computer over a wireless LAN due to a wall, place the printer and the computer in the same room.

In addition, if a device like a microwave oven that emits radio waves of the same frequency bandwidth as a wireless router is nearby, it may cause interference. Place the wireless router as far away from interference sources as possible.

Place devices a suitable distance from the printer.

### Check7 Make sure 5 devices are already connected.

Wireless Direct does not allow more than 5 devices to be connected.

## **Cannot Print or Scan from a Computer Connected to the Network**

---

## **A**

### Check1 Make sure the computer is connected to the wireless router.

For more on how to check the computer settings or connection status, see your computer instruction manual or contact its manufacturer.

### Check2 If MP Drivers are not installed, install them.

- For Windows:  
Install the MP Drivers using the Setup CD-ROM or install them from the Canon website.
- For Mac OS:  
Install the MP Drivers from the Canon website.

### Check3 Make sure wireless router does not restrict which computers can access it.

For more on connecting to and setting up your wireless router, see the wireless router instruction manual or contact its manufacturer.

## **Note**

- To check the MAC address or IP address of your computer, see [Checking Computer IP Address or MAC Address](#).

## Network Key Unknown

- [WPA/WPA2 or WEP Key Set for Wireless Router Unknown, Cannot Connect](#)
- [Setting an Encryption Key](#)

### WPA/WPA2 or WEP Key Set for Wireless Router Unknown, Cannot Connect

#### 

For more on setting up a wireless router, see the instruction manual provided with the wireless router or contact its manufacturer. Make sure your computer can communicate with the wireless router.

#### Note

- For Windows, set up the printer to match the wireless router settings using IJ Network Device Setup Utility.

### Setting an Encryption Key

#### 

For more on setting up a wireless router, see the instruction manual provided with the wireless router or contact its manufacturer. Make sure your computer can communicate with the wireless router.

#### Note

- For Windows, set up the printer to match the wireless router settings using IJ Network Device Setup Utility.

Selecting WPA, WPA2, or WPA/WPA2 is recommended for security reason. If your wireless router is compatible with WPA/WPA2, you can also use WPA2 or WPA.

- **Using WPA/WPA2**

The authentication method, passphrase, and dynamic encryption type must be the same for the wireless router, the printer, and your computer.

Enter the passphrase configured on the wireless router (a sequence of between 8 and 63 alphanumeric characters, or a 64-character hexadecimal number).

Either TKIP (basic encryption) or AES (secure encryption) is selected automatically as the dynamic encryption method.

For details, see If WPA/WPA2 Details Screen Appears.

#### Note

- This printer supports WPA/WPA2-PSK (WPA/WPA2-Personal) and WPA2-PSK (WPA2-Personal).

- **Using WEP**

The key length, key format, key to use (one of 1 to 4), and authentication method must be the same for the wireless router, the printer, and your computer.

To communicate with a wireless router that uses automatically generated WEP keys, you must set the printer to use the key generated by the wireless router, entering it in hexadecimal format.

- For Windows:

When the **WEP Details** screen appears after you click **Search...** on the **Network Settings (Wireless LAN)** screen in IJ Network Device Setup Utility, follow the on-screen instructions to set the WEP key length, format, and the number.

For details, see *If WEP Details Screen Appears*.

### **▶▶ Note**

- If the printer is connected to an AirPort Base Station via LAN:

If the printer is connected to an AirPort Base Station via a LAN, check the settings in **Wireless Security of AirPort Utility**.

- Select **64 bit** if **WEP 40 bit** is selected for key length in AirPort Base Station.
- Select **1** for **Key ID**. Otherwise, computer will not be able to communicate with printer via the wireless router.



## Printer Cannot Be Used After Replacing Wireless Router or Changing Its Settings

---



When you replace a wireless router, redo the network setup for the printer.

- For Windows:  
Use the Setup CD-ROM or follow the instructions on the Canon website.
- For Mac OS:  
Follow the instructions on the Canon website.

If this does not solve the problem, see below.

- [Cannot Communicate with Printer After Enabling MAC/IP Address Filtering or Encryption Key on Wireless Router](#)
- [With Encryption On, Cannot Communicate with Printer After Changing Encryption Type at Wireless Router](#)



## Cannot Communicate with Printer After Enabling MAC/IP Address Filtering or Encryption Key on Wireless Router

---



**Check1** Check wireless router setting.

To check the wireless router setting, see the instruction manual provided with the wireless router or contact its manufacturer. Make sure the computer and the wireless router can communicate with each other under this setting.

**Check2** If filtering MAC addresses or IP addresses at wireless router, check that MAC addresses or IP addresses for computer, network device, and printer are registered.

**Check3** If using WPA/WPA2 or WEP key, make sure encryption key for computer, network device, and printer matches key set for wireless router.

Not only the WEP key itself, but also the key length, key format, the key ID to use, and the authentication method must be the same for the printer, the wireless router, and the computer.

For details, see [Setting an Encryption Key](#).

## **Q** With Encryption On, Cannot Communicate with Printer After Changing Encryption Type at Wireless Router

---

### **A**

If you change the encryption type for the printer and it subsequently cannot communicate with the computer, make sure the encryption type for the computer and the wireless router matches the type set for the printer.

- [Cannot Communicate with Printer After Enabling MAC/IP Address Filtering or Encryption Key on Wireless Router](#)

## Other Network Problems

- ▶ **Checking Network Information**
- ▶ **Restoring to Factory Defaults**
- ▶ **Message Appears on Computer During Setup**
- ▶ **Packets Are Sent Constantly (Windows)**



## Checking Network Information

- [Checking Printer IP Address or MAC Address](#)
- [Checking Computer IP Address or MAC Address](#)
- [Checking Communication Between the Computer, the Printer, and the Wireless Router](#)
- [Checking Network Setting Information](#)

### Checking Printer IP Address or MAC Address

---

#### 

To check the printer's IP Address or MAC address, print out the network settings information.

- [Printing Network Settings](#)

For Windows, you can check the network setting information on the computer screen.

- IJ Network Device Setup Utility Screen

### Checking Computer IP Address or MAC Address

---

#### 

To check the IP Address or MAC address of your computer, follow the instructions below.

- For Windows:

1. Select **Command Prompt** as shown below.

In Windows 10, right-click **Start** button and select **Command Prompt**.

In Windows 8.1 or Windows 8, select **Command Prompt** from the **Start** screen. If **Command Prompt** is not displayed on the **Start** screen, select the **Search** charm and search for "**Command Prompt**".

In Windows 7 or Windows Vista, click **Start** > **All Programs** > **Accessories** > **Command Prompt**.

2. Enter "ipconfig/all" and press **Enter**.

The IP address and MAC address of your computer appear. If your computer is not connected to a network, the IP address does not appear.

- For Mac OS:

1. Select **System Preferences** from Apple menu, and then click **Network**.
2. Make sure network interface used by computer is selected, and then click **Advanced**.

Make sure **Wi-Fi** is selected as network interface.

3. Check the IP address or MAC address.

Click **TCP/IP** to check the IP address.

Click **Hardware** to check the MAC address.

## Checking Communication Between the Computer, the Printer, and the Wireless Router

---

### A

Perform a ping test to check if communication is taking place.

- For Windows:

1. Select **Command Prompt** as shown below.

In Windows 10, right-click **Start** button and select **Command Prompt**.

In Windows 8.1 or Windows 8, select **Command Prompt** from the **Start** screen. If **Command Prompt** is not displayed on the **Start** screen, select the **Search** charm and search for "**Command Prompt**".

In Windows 7 or Windows Vista, click **Start** > **All Programs** > **Accessories** > **Command Prompt**.

2. Type the ping command and press **Enter**.

The ping command is as follows: ping XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX

"XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX" is the IP address of the target device.

If communication is taking place, a message like the one shown below appears.

```
Reply from XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX: bytes=32 time=10ms TTL=255
```

If **Request timed out** appears, communication is not taking place.

- For Mac OS:

1. Start **Network Utility** as shown below.

In Mac OS X v10.11, Mac OS X v10.10 or Mac OS X v10.9, select **Computer** from **Go** menu of Finder, double-click **Macintosh HD** > **System** > **Library** > **CoreServices** > **Applications** > **Network Utility**.

In Mac OS X v10.8, open **Utilities** folder in **Applications** folder, then double-click **Network Utility**.

2. Click **Ping**.
3. Make sure **Send only XX pings** (XX are numbers) is selected.
4. Enter IP address of target printer or target wireless router in **Enter the network address to ping**.
5. Click **Ping**.

"XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX" is the IP address of the target device.

A message such as the following appears.

```
64 bytes from XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX: icmp_seq=0 ttl=64 time=3.394 ms
```

```
64 bytes from XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=1.786 ms
```

```
64 bytes from XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=1.739 ms
```

```
--- XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX ping statistics ---
```

3 packets transmitted, 3 packets received, 0% packet loss

If packet loss is 100%, communication is not taking place. Otherwise, computer is communicating with target device.

## **Checking Network Setting Information**

---

### **A**

To check the printer's network settings information, print out the network settings information.

- [Printing Network Settings](#)



## Restoring to Factory Defaults

---



### »» Important

- For Windows:

Initialization erases all network settings on the printer, making printing or scanning operation from a computer over a network impossible. To use the printer over a network again after restoring it to the factory defaults, use the Setup CD-ROM or follow the instructions on the Canon website to redo setup.

- For Mac OS:

Initialization erases all network settings on the printer, making printing or scanning operation from a computer over a network impossible. To use the printer over a network again after restoring it to the factory defaults, follow the instructions on the Canon website to redo setup.

Press and hold **Stop** button and release it when **Alarm** lamp flashes 19 times.

The network settings are initialized.

## **Printing Problems**

- **Printing Does Not Start**
- **No Ink Comes Out**
- **Paper Does Not Feed Properly/"No Paper" Error**
- **Print Results Are Unsatisfactory**



## Printing Does Not Start



**Check1** Make sure printer is securely plugged in and press **ON** button to turn it on.

The **ON** lamp flashes while the printer is initializing. Wait until the **ON** lamp stops flashing and remains lit.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- If you are printing large data such as photos or other graphics, printing may take longer to start. The **ON** lamp flashes while the computer is processing data and sending it to the printer. Wait until printing starts.

**Check2** Make sure printer is properly connected to computer.

When the printer is connected to your computer with a USB cable, check the following:

- If you are using a relay device such as a USB hub, disconnect it, connect the printer directly to the computer, and retry the printing. If printing starts normally, there is a problem with the relay device. Contact the vendor of the relay device.
- There could also be a problem with the USB cable. Replace the USB cable and retry the printing.

**Check3** If printing from a computer, delete unnecessary print jobs.

- For Windows:
  - Deleting the Undesired Print Job
- For Mac OS:
  - Deleting the Undesired Print Job

**Check4** Is your printer's printer driver is selected when printing?

The printer will not print properly if you are using a printer driver for a different printer.

- For Windows:

Make sure "Canon XXX series" (where "XXX" is your printer's name) is selected in the Print dialog box.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- To make the printer the one selected by default, select **Set as Default Printer**.

- For Mac OS:

Make sure your printer's name is selected in **Printer** in the Print dialog.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- To make the printer the one selected by default, select the printer for **Default printer**.

**Check5** Is print data extremely large? (Windows)

Click **Print Options** on **Page Setup** sheet of the printer driver. Then set **Prevention of Print Data Loss** to **On** in the dialog that appears.

\* This may reduce print quality.

**Check6** If printing from your computer, restart computer.



## No Ink Comes Out



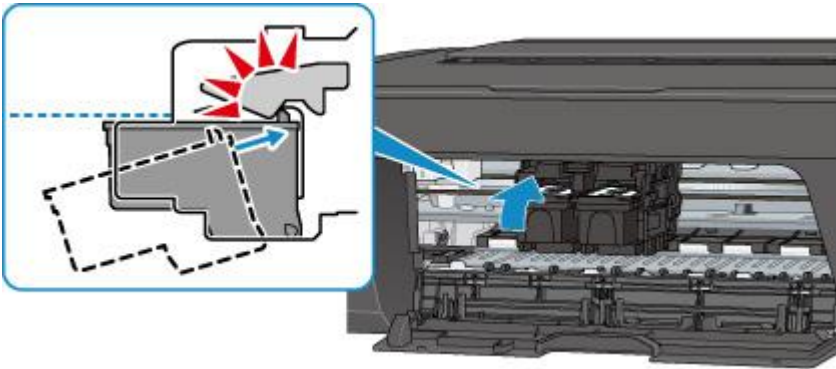
**Check1** When a FINE cartridge runs out of ink, replace it with a new one.

**Check2** Is the FINE cartridge installed properly?

If the FINE cartridge is not installed securely, ink may not be ejected correctly.

Retract the output tray extension and the paper output tray, open the cover, then remove the FINE cartridges.

Then install the FINE cartridges again. Push up the FINE cartridge until it clicks into place.



After confirming that the FINE cartridge is installed properly, close the cover.

**Check3** Are the print head nozzles clogged?

Print the nozzle check pattern to determine whether the ink ejects properly from the print head nozzles.

For details on printing the nozzle check pattern, print head cleaning, and print head deep cleaning, see [If Printing Is Faint or Uneven](#).

- If nozzle check pattern is not printed correctly:  
After performing the print head cleaning, print the nozzle check pattern and examine the pattern.
- If problem is not resolved after performing print head cleaning twice:  
Perform print head deep cleaning.  
If the problem is not resolved after performing print head deep cleaning, turn off the printer and perform print head deep cleaning again 24 hours later.
- If problem is not resolved after performing print head deep cleaning twice:  
Ink may have run out. Replace the FINE cartridge.





## Paper Does Not Feed Properly/"No Paper" Error



**Check1** Make sure paper is loaded.

■ [Loading Paper](#)

**Check2** When loading paper, consider the following.

- When loading two or more sheets of paper, align the edges of the sheets before loading the paper.
- When loading two or more sheets of paper, make sure the paper stack does not exceed the paper load limit.

However, paper may not feed correctly at the maximum capacity, depending on the type of paper or environmental conditions (very high or low temperature and humidity). In such cases, reduce the amount of paper you load at a time to less than half of the paper load limit.

- Always load the paper in portrait orientation, regardless of the printing orientation.
- When you load the paper, load the paper with the print side facing UP. Align the paper stack against the right side of the rear tray and slide the paper guide so that it just touches the left edge of the stack.

■ [Loading Paper](#)

**Check3** Is paper too thick or curled?

■ [Unsupported Media Types](#)

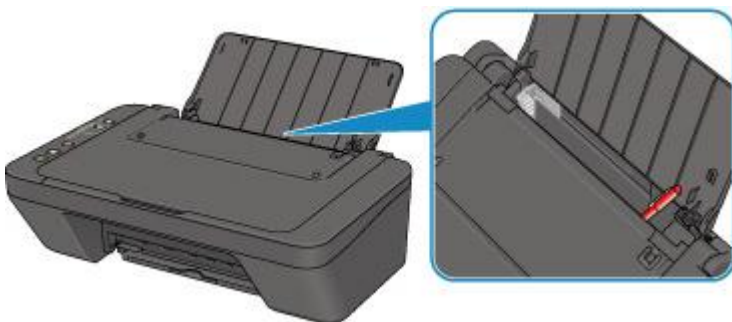
**Check4** When loading envelopes, consider the following:

See [Loading Paper](#), and prepare the envelopes before printing.

Once you have prepared the envelopes, load them in portrait orientation. If the envelopes are placed in landscape orientation, they will not feed properly.

**Check5** Make sure media type and paper size settings match with loaded paper.

**Check6** Make sure that there are not any foreign objects in the rear tray.



If the paper tears in the rear tray, see [List of Support Code for Error \(Paper Jams\)](#) to remove it.

If there are any foreign objects in the rear tray, be sure to turn off the printer, unplug it from the power supply, then remove the foreign object.



**Check7** Clean paper feed roller.

■ [Cleaning Paper Feed Rollers](#)

▶▶▶ **Note**

- Cleaning the paper feed roller abrades it, so do this only when necessary.

If the measures above do not solve the problem, contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.



## Print Results Are Unsatisfactory

If the print results are unsatisfactory due to white streaks, misaligned lines, or uneven colors, check the paper and print quality settings first.

---



### Check1 Do page size and media type settings match size and type of loaded paper?

If these settings do not match, it is not possible to obtain the proper result.

If you are printing a photograph or an illustration, an incorrect paper type setting may reduce the quality of the printout color.

Also, if you print with an incorrect paper type setting, the printed surface may be scratched.

The method for checking the paper and print quality settings differs depending on what you are using your printer for.

Check the page size and media type settings using the printer driver.

- For Windows:

-  [Printing with Easy Setup](#)

- For Mac OS:

-  [Printing with Easy Setup](#)

### Check2 Make sure appropriate print quality is selected using printer driver.


Select a print quality suited to the paper and to what you are printing. If you notice blurs or uneven colors, increase the print quality setting and retry the printing.

You can check the print quality setting using the printer driver.

- For Windows:









-  [Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data](#)

- For Mac OS:

-  [Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data](#)

### Check3 If problem is not resolved, check other causes.

See also the sections below:

-  [Paper Is Blank/Printing Is Blurry/Colors Are Wrong/White Streaks Appear](#)
-  [Colors Are Unclear](#)
-  [Lines Are Misaligned](#)
-  [Paper Is Smudged / Printed Surface Is Scratched](#)
-  [Cannot Complete Printing](#)
-  [Lines Incomplete or Missing \(Windows\)](#)
-  [Images Incomplete or Missing \(Windows\)](#)
-  [Ink Blots / Paper Curl](#)

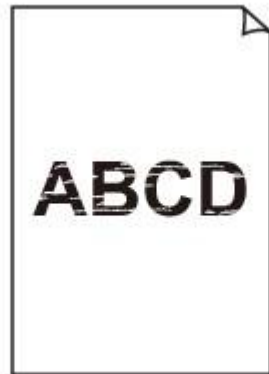
- Back of Paper Is Smudged
- Uneven or Streaked Colors



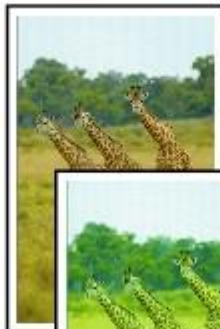
# Paper Is Blank/Printing Is Blurry/Colors Are Wrong/White Streaks Appear



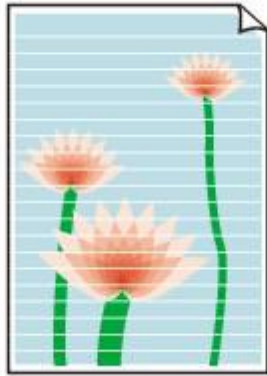
## Printing Is Blurry



## Colors Are Wrong



## White Streaks Appear



## A

**Check1** Check paper and print quality settings.

■ [Print Results Are Unsatisfactory](#)

**Check2** Are the print head nozzles clogged?

Print the nozzle check pattern to determine whether the ink ejects properly from the print head nozzles.

For details on printing the nozzle check pattern, print head cleaning, and print head deep cleaning, see [If Printing Is Faint or Uneven](#).

- If nozzle check pattern is not printed correctly:  
After performing the print head cleaning, print the nozzle check pattern and examine the pattern.
- If problem is not resolved after performing print head cleaning twice:  
Perform print head deep cleaning.  
If the problem is not resolved after performing print head deep cleaning, turn off the printer and perform print head deep cleaning again 24 hours later.
- If problem is not resolved after performing print head deep cleaning twice:  
Ink may have run out. Replace the FINE cartridge.

**Check3** When a FINE cartridge runs out of ink, replace it with a new one.

**Check4** When using paper with one printable surface, make sure paper is loaded with printable side facing up.

Printing on the wrong side of such paper may cause unclear prints or prints with reduced quality.

Load paper with the printable side facing up.

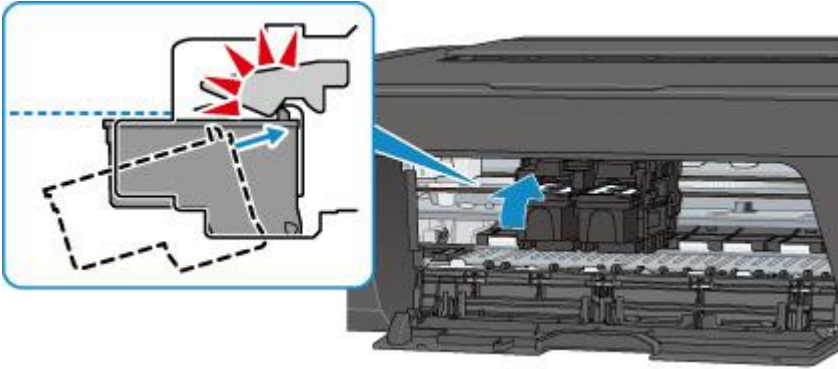
Refer to the instruction manual supplied with the paper for detailed information on the printable side.

**Check5** Is the FINE cartridge installed properly?

If the FINE cartridge is not installed securely, ink may not be ejected correctly.

Retract the output tray extension and the paper output tray, open the cover, then remove the FINE cartridges.

Then install the FINE cartridges again. Push up the FINE cartridge until it clicks into place.



After confirming that the FINE cartridge is installed properly, close the cover.

- **When copying, see also the sections below:**

**Check6** Is platen glass dirty?

Clean the platen glass.

- [Cleaning the Platen Glass and Document Cover](#)

**Check7** Make sure original is properly loaded on platen glass.

- [Loading Originals](#)

**Check8** Is original loaded with side to be copied facing down on platen glass?

**Check9** Did you copy a printout done by this printer?

If you use a printout done by this printer as the original, print quality may be reduced depending on the condition of the original.

Reprint from the computer if you can reprint from it.

# Q

## Colors Are Unclear

# A

### Check1 Is nozzle check pattern printed properly?

Print the nozzle check pattern to determine whether the ink ejects properly from the print head nozzles.

For details on printing the nozzle check pattern, print head cleaning, and print head deep cleaning, see [If Printing Is Faint or Uneven](#).

- If nozzle check pattern is not printed correctly:

After performing the print head cleaning, print the nozzle check pattern and examine the pattern.

- If problem is not resolved after performing print head cleaning twice:

Perform print head deep cleaning.

If the problem is not resolved after performing print head deep cleaning, turn off the printer and perform print head deep cleaning again 24 hours later.

- If problem is not resolved after performing print head deep cleaning twice:

Ink may have run out. Replace the FINE cartridge.

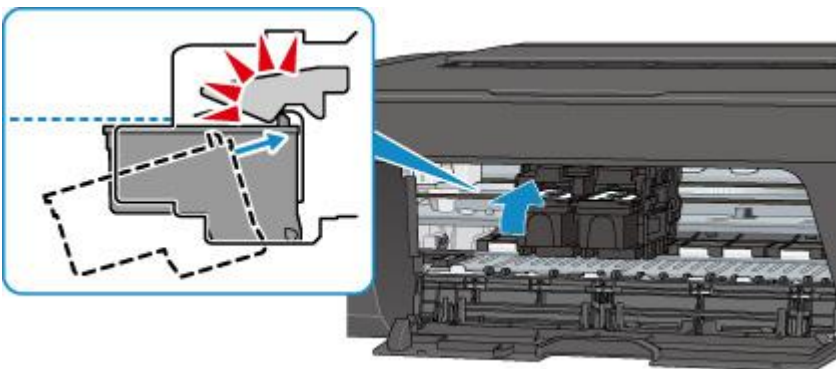
### Check2 When a FINE cartridge runs out of ink, replace it with a new one.

### Check3 Is FINE cartridge installed properly?

If the FINE cartridge is not installed securely, ink may not be ejected correctly.

Retract the output tray extension and the paper output tray, open the cover, then remove the FINE cartridges.

Then install the FINE cartridges again. Push up the FINE cartridge until it clicks into place.



After confirming that the FINE cartridge is installed properly, close the cover.

### ►►► Note

- Printed colors may not match screen colors due to basic differences in the methods used to produce colors. Color control settings and environmental differences can also affect how colors appear on the screen. Therefore, colors of printing results may be different from those on the screen.





## Lines Are Misaligned



**Check1** Check paper and print quality settings.

■ [Print Results Are Unsatisfactory](#)

**Check2** Perform print head alignment.

If printed lines are misaligned or print results are otherwise unsatisfactory, adjust the print head position.

■ [Aligning the Print Head](#)

### ▶▶▶ Note

- If the problem is not resolved after performing the print head alignment, perform print head alignment manually from your computer.
  - For Windows:
    - [Aligning the Print Head Position](#)
  - For Mac OS:
    - [Aligning the Print Head Position](#)

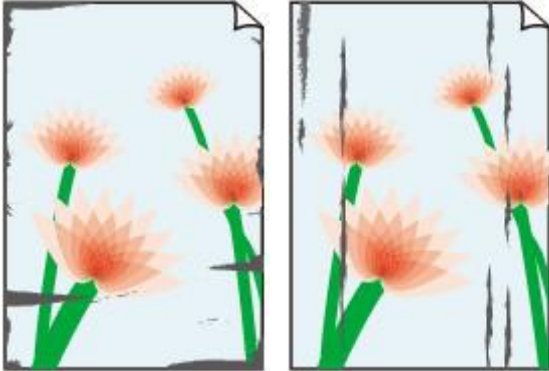
**Check3** Increase print quality and try printing again.

Increasing the print quality using the printer driver may improve the print result.



## Paper Is Smudged / Printed Surface Is Scratched

### Paper Is Smudged



Smudged Edges

Smudged Surface



### Printed Surface Is Scratched

---



**Check1** Check paper and print quality settings.

 [Print Results Are Unsatisfactory](#)

**Check2** Check paper type.

Make sure you are using the right paper for what you are printing.

 [Media Types You Can Use](#)

**Check3** Correct curl before loading paper.

We recommend putting unused paper back into the package and storing it flat.

- **Plain Paper**

Turn the paper over and reload it to print on the other side.

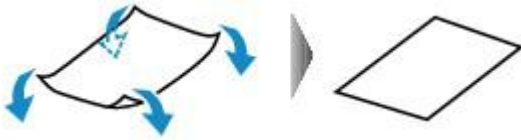
Leaving the paper loaded on the rear tray for a long time may cause the paper to curl. In this case, load the paper with the other side facing up. It may resolve the problem.

- **Other Paper**

If the paper corners curl more than 0.1 inch / 3 mm (A) in height, the paper may smudge or may not feed properly. Follow the instructions below to correct the paper curl.



1. Roll up paper in opposite direction to paper curl as shown below.

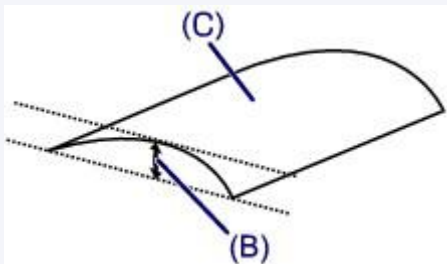


2. Check that paper is now flat.

We recommend printing curl-corrected paper one sheet at a time.

### ►► Note

- Depending on paper type, the paper may smudge or may not feed properly even if it is not curled inward. Follow the instructions below to curl the paper outward up to 0.1 inch / 3 mm (B) in height before printing. This may improve the print result.



(C) Print side

We recommend feeding paper that has been curled outward one sheet at a time.

#### Check4 If intensity is set high, reduce intensity setting and try printing again.

If you are printing with a high intensity setting on plain paper, the paper may absorb too much ink and become wavy, causing paper abrasion.

Check the intensity setting in the printer driver.

- For Windows:
  - Adjusting Intensity
- For Mac OS:
  - Adjusting Intensity

#### Check5 Do not print outside recommended printing area.

If you print outside the recommended printing area of your paper, ink may stain the lower edge of the paper.

Resize the document using application software.

■ Print Area

#### Check6 Is platen glass dirty?

Clean the platen glass.

#### ■ ■ Cleaning the Platen Glass and Document Cover

#### Check7 Is paper feed roller dirty?

Clean paper feed roller.

#### ■ ■ [Cleaning the Paper Feed Rollers](#)

#### ▶▶▶ Note

- Cleaning the paper feed roller abrades it, so do this only when necessary.

#### Check8 Is inside of printer dirty?

During duplex printing, ink may stain the inside of the printer, smudging the printout.

Perform bottom plate cleaning to clean inside of printer.

#### ■ ■ [Cleaning the Inside of the Printer \(Bottom Plate Cleaning\)](#)

#### ▶▶▶ Note

- To prevent staining inside the printer, be sure to set the correct paper size.

#### Check9 Set longer ink drying time.

This allows the printed surface to dry, preventing smudges and scratches.

- For Windows:

1. Make sure printer is turned on.
2. Open printer driver setup window.
  - ■ [How to Open the Printer Driver Setup Window](#)
3. Click **Maintenance** tab and **Custom Settings**.
4. Drag **Ink Drying Wait Time** slide bar to set the wait time and click **OK**.
5. Check message and click **OK**.

- For Mac OS:

1. Make sure printer is turned on.
2. Open the Canon IJ Printer Utility2.
  - ■ [Opening the Canon IJ Printer Utility2](#)
3. Select **Custom Settings** in the pop-up menu.
4. Drag **Ink Drying Wait Time**: slide bar to set the wait time and click **Apply**.
5. Check message and click **OK**.

## Scanning Problems (Windows)

- ▶ [Scanning Problems](#)
- ▶ **IJ Scan Utility Error Messages**
- ▶ **ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Error Messages**

## Scanning Problems

- ▶ **Scanner Does Not Work**
- ▶ **ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Does Not Start**



## Scanner Does Not Work

---



**Check 1** Make sure that your scanner or printer is turned on.

**Check 2** Connect the USB cable to a different USB port on the computer.

**Check 3** If the USB cable is connected to a USB hub, remove it from the USB hub and connect it to a USB port on the computer.

**Check 4** With network connection, check the connection status and reconnect as needed.

**Check 5** Restart the computer.



## ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Does Not Start

---



**Check 1** Make sure MP Drivers is installed.

If not installed, install MP Drivers from the Setup CD-ROM or our website.

**Check 2** Select your scanner or printer on the application's menu.

### ▶▶▶ Important

- If your scanner or printer name is displayed multiple times, select the one that does not include WIA.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- The operation may differ depending on the application.
- Use the WIA driver when scanning from a WIA-compliant application.
  - Scanning with WIA Driver

**Check 3** Make sure that the application supports TWAIN.

You cannot start ScanGear (scanner driver) from applications not supporting TWAIN.

**Check 4** Scan and save images with IJ Scan Utility and open the files in your application.



## **Mechanical Problems**

- ▶ **Power Does Not Come On**
- ▶ **Power Shuts Off By Itself**
- ▶ **USB Connection Problems**
- ▶ **Cannot Communicate with Printer via USB**



## Power Does Not Come On

---



**Check1** Press **ON** button.

**Check2** Make sure power plug is securely connected to printer, and then turn it back on.

**Check3** Unplug printer, leave it for at least 2 minutes, and then plug it back in and turn it on again.

If this does not solve the problem, contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.



## Power Shuts Off By Itself

---



**Check** If printer is set to turn off automatically after a certain time, disable this setting.

If you have set the printer to turn off automatically after a specified time, the power will shut off by itself once that time has elapsed.

- If you are using a Windows and if you do not want the printer to turn off automatically:  
Open the printer driver setup window and in **Auto Power** in **Maintenance** sheet, select **Disable** for **Auto Power Off**.
- If you are using a Mac OS and if you do not want the printer to turn off automatically:  
Open Canon IJ Printer Utility2, select **Power Settings** in the pop-up menu, and then select **Disable** for **Auto Power Off** on **Auto Power**.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- You can also enable the printer to turn on/off automatically from the operation panel.
  - [Turning on Printer Automatically](#)
- If you are using a Windows, you can also enable the printer to turn on/off automatically from ScanGear (scanner driver).
  - [Scanner Tab](#)

## USB Connection Problems

### **Q** Printing or Scanning Is Slow/Hi-Speed USB Connection Does Not Work/"This device can perform faster" Message Appears (Windows)

---

### **A**

If your system environment does not support Hi-Speed USB, the printer operates at the slower speed of USB 1.1. In this case, the printer works properly but printing or scanning speed may slow down due to the communication speed.

**Check** Check following to make sure your system environment supports Hi-Speed USB connection.

- Does the USB port on your computer support Hi-Speed USB connection?
- Does the USB cable or the USB hub support Hi-Speed USB connection?

Be sure to use a certified Hi-Speed USB cable. We recommend that the USB cable be no longer than 10 feet / 3 meters or so.

- Does the operating system of your computer support Hi-Speed USB connection?

Install the latest update for your computer.

- Is the Hi-Speed USB driver working properly?

If necessary, obtain and install the latest version of the Hi-Speed USB driver for your computer.

### **»» Important**

- For more information, contact the manufacturer of your computer, USB cable, or USB hub.



## Cannot Communicate with Printer via USB

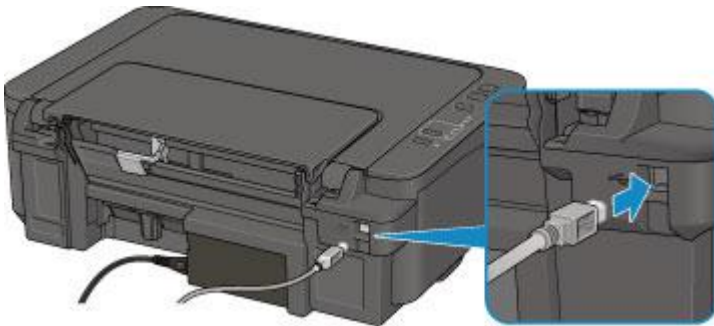
---



**Check1** Make sure printer is turned on.

**Check2** Connect USB cable properly.

As the illustration below, the USB port is at the back of the printer.



**Check3** Make sure **Enable bidirectional support** is selected in **Ports** sheet of properties dialog box of printer driver. (Windows)

■ [How to Open the Printer Driver Setup Window](#)

## Installation and Download Problems

- [Cannot Install MP Drivers](#)
- [Updating MP Drivers in Network Environment \(Windows\)](#)



## Cannot Install MP Drivers

---



■ [For Windows:](#)

■ [For Mac OS:](#)

### For Windows:

- **If installation does not start when you insert Setup CD-ROM:**

Follow the instructions below to start the installation.

1. Make the following settings.

- In Windows 10, click **Start** button > **File Explorer**, and then click **This PC** from list on left.
- In Windows 8.1 or Windows 8, select **Explorer** icon in **Taskbar** on **Desktop**, and then select **This PC (Computer for Windows 8)** from list on left.
- In Windows 7 or Windows Vista, click **Start**, and then click **Computer**.

2. Double-click the  CD-ROM icon in the window that appears.

If the contents of the CD-ROM appear, double-click **MSETUP4.EXE**.

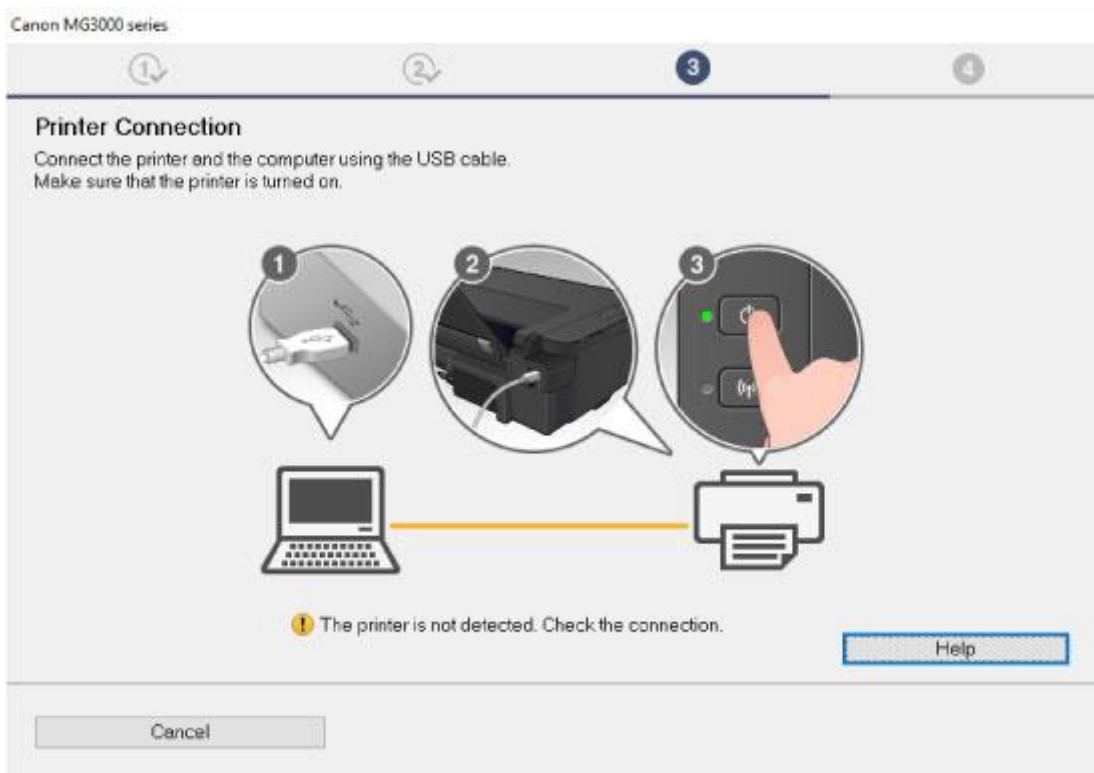
If you cannot install the MP Drivers with the Setup CD-ROM, install them from the Canon website.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- If the CD-ROM icon does not appear, try the following:
  - Remove the CD-ROM from your computer and reinsert it.
  - Restart your computer.

If the icon still does not appear, try a different disc and see if it appears. If it does, there is a problem with the Setup CD-ROM. Contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

- **If you cannot get past the Printer Connection screen:**



#### ■ [Cannot Proceed beyond Printer Connection Screen](#)

- **Other cases:**

Reinstall the MP Drivers.

If the MP Drivers were not installed correctly, uninstall the MP Drivers, restart your computer, and then reinstall the MP Drivers.

#### ■ [Deleting the Unnecessary MP Drivers](#)

Reinstall the MP Drivers with the Setup CD-ROM or install them from the Canon website.

#### ▶▶▶ **Note**

- If the installer was stopped due to a Windows error, Windows operation may be unstable, and you may not be able to install the drivers. Restart your computer and then reinstall the drivers.

## **For Mac OS:**

Download the drivers from the support page of Canon website and reinstall it.





## Updating MP Drivers in Network Environment (Windows)

---



Download the latest MP Drivers.

The latest MP Drivers for your model are available for download on the Canon website.

Uninstall the existing MP Drivers and follow the installation instructions to install the latest MP Drivers that you downloaded. In the connection method selection screen, select **Use the printer with wireless LAN connection**. The printer is detected automatically in the network.

Make sure the printer was found, and install the MP Drivers following the on-screen instructions.

### Note

- The network settings on the printer are not affected, so the printer can be used on the network without redoing settings.

## **Errors and Messages**

- ▶ **An Error Occurs**
- ▶ **Message Appears**

## An Error Occurs

If an error occurs in printing, for example if the paper runs out or jams, a troubleshooting message appears automatically. Take the appropriate action described in the message.

When an error occurs, the **Alarm** lamp flashes and a support code (error number) appears on the computer screen. For some errors, the **ON** lamp and the **Alarm** lamp flashes alternately. Check the status of the lamps and the message, and take the appropriate action.

### Alarm Lamp Flashes

Example of 2 times flashing:



(A) Flashes

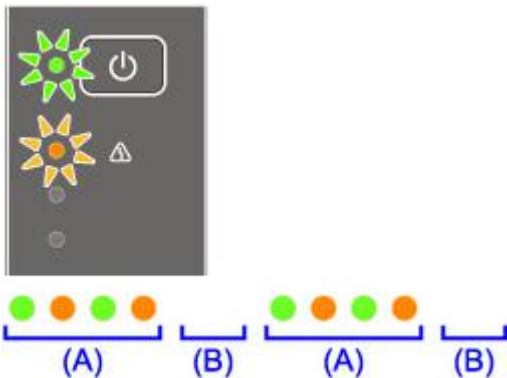
(B) Goes off

Number of flashes	Cause	Support Code
2 flashes	Printer is out of paper.	<a href="#">1000</a>
3 flashes	The cover is opened while printing is in progress.	<a href="#">1203</a>
	Paper jam.	<a href="#">1300</a>
4 flashes	FINE cartridge is not installed properly.	<a href="#">168A</a>
5 flashes	FINE cartridge is not installed.	<a href="#">1401</a>
	FINE cartridge cannot be recognized.	1403
	Appropriate ink cartridge is not installed.	<a href="#">1485</a>
8 flashes	Ink absorber is almost full.	<a href="#">1700</a>
9 flashes	The protective material for the FINE cartridge or the tape remains attached.	<a href="#">1890</a>
11 flashes	The media type and paper size are not set correctly.	<a href="#">4102</a>
	Cannot perform printing with the current print setting.	<a href="#">4103</a>
12 flashes	The specified data cannot be printed.	4100
13 flashes	Ink may have run out.	<a href="#">1686</a>

14 flashes	Ink cartridge cannot be recognized.	1684
15 flashes	FINE cartridge cannot be recognized.	<a href="#">1682</a>
16 flashes	Ink has run out.	<a href="#">1688</a>

## ON Lamp and Alarm Lamp Flash Alternately

Example of 2 times flashing:



(A) Flashes

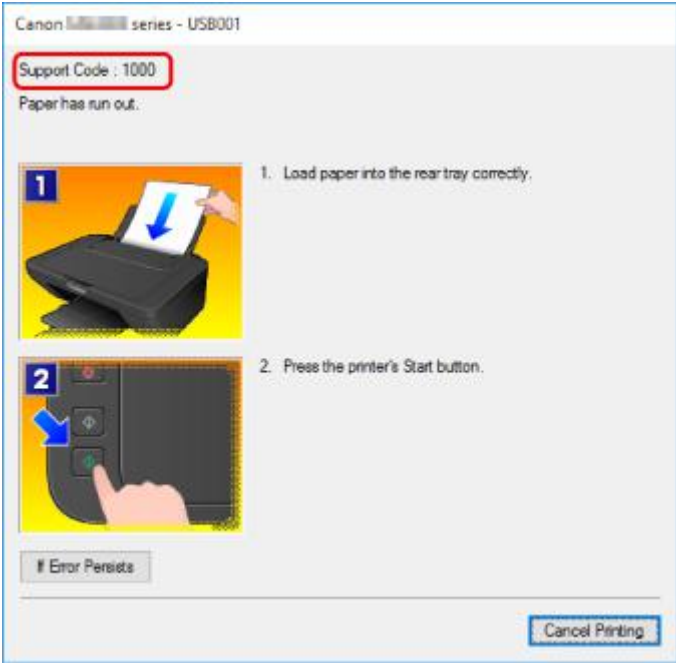
(B) Goes off

Number of flashes	Cause	Support Code
2 flashes	Printer error has occurred.	<a href="#">5100</a>
7 flashes	Printer error has occurred.	<a href="#">5B00</a> , 5B01
10 flashes	An error requiring a repair has occurred.	B201 B202 B203 B204
Other cases than above	Printer error has occurred.	<a href="#">5011</a> <a href="#">5012</a> 5050 <a href="#">5200</a> 5400 <a href="#">6000</a> 6500 6800 6801 6900 6901 6902

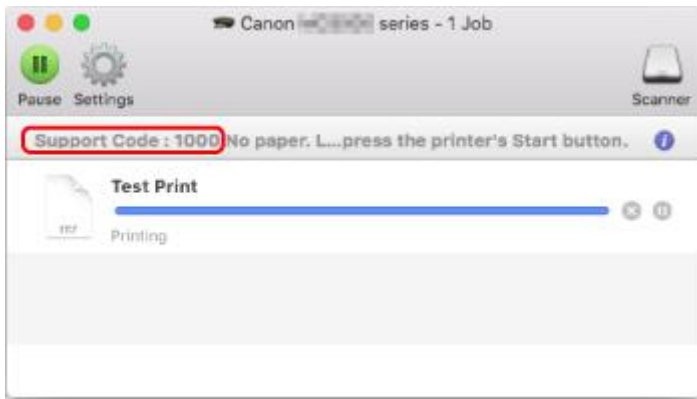
	6910
	6911
	6930
	6931
	6932
	6933
	6936
	6937
	6938
	6940
	6941
	6942
	6943
	6944
	6945
	6946

**When a Support Code and a message are displayed on the computer screen:**

- For Windows:



- For Mac OS:



\* The screen differs depending on the OS you are using.

For details on how to resolve errors, see [List of Support Code for Error](#).

### ▶▶▶ Note

- For details on how to resolve errors without Support Codes, see [Message Appears](#).

## Message Appears

This section describes some of the errors and messages that may appear.

### ►► Note

- A support code (error number) is displayed on the computer for some errors. For details on errors that have support code, see [List of Support Code for Error](#).

- [Error Regarding Power Cord Being Unplugged Is Displayed \(Windows\)](#)
- [Writing Error/Output Error/Communication Error \(Windows\)](#)
- [Other Error Messages \(Windows\)](#)
- [Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program Screen Is Displayed \(Windows\)](#)
- [Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program Icon Appears \(Mac OS\)](#)

### Error Regarding Power Cord Being Unplugged Is Displayed (Windows)

#### A

The printer may have been unplugged while it was on.

Check the error message that appears on the computer and click **OK**.

The printer starts printing.

See [Notice for Unplugging the Power Cord](#) for unplugging the power cord.

### Writing Error/Output Error/Communication Error (Windows)

#### A

**Check1** If the **ON** lamp is off, make sure printer is plugged in and turn it on.

The **ON** lamp flashes while the printer is initializing. Wait until the **ON** lamp stops flashing and remains lit.

**Check2** Make sure printer is properly connected to computer.

If you are using a USB cable, make sure it is securely connected to both the printer and the computer. When the USB cable is securely plugged in, check the following:

- If you are using a relay device such as a USB hub, disconnect it, connect the printer directly to the computer, and retry the printing. If printing starts normally, there is a problem with the relay device. Contact the vendor of the relay device.
- There could also be a problem with the USB cable. Replace the USB cable and retry the printing.

If you use the printer over a LAN, make sure the printer is correctly set up for network use.

**Check3** Make sure MP Drivers are installed correctly.

Uninstall the MP Drivers following the procedure described in [Deleting the Unnecessary MP Drivers](#) and reinstall them from the Setup CD-ROM or the Canon website.

**Check4** When printer is connected to your computer with a USB cable, check device status from your computer.

Follow the procedure below to check the device status.

1. Open the Device Manager on your computer as shown below.

If **User Account Control** screen is displayed, follow the on-screen instructions.

- In Windows 10, right-click **Start** button and select **Device Manager**.
- In Windows 8.1 or Windows 8, select **Control Panel** from **Settings** charm on **Desktop > Hardware and Sound > Device Manager**.
- In Windows 7 or Windows Vista, click **Control Panel, Hardware and Sound, and Device Manager**.

2. Double-click **Universal Serial Bus controllers** and **USB Printing Support**.

If **USB Printing Support Properties** screen does not appear, make sure the printer is correctly connected to the computer.

 **Check2** [Make sure printer is properly connected to computer.](#)

3. Click **General** tab and check for a device problem.

If a device error is shown, see Windows Help to resolve it.

## Other Error Messages (Windows)

---

### 

**Check** If an error message appears outside printer status monitor, check the following:

- **"Could not spool successfully due to insufficient disk space"**  
Delete any unnecessary files to increase the amount of free space on the disk.
- **"Could not spool successfully due to insufficient memory"**  
Close other applications to increase the available memory.  
If you still cannot print, restart your computer and retry the printing.
- **"Printer driver could not be found"**  
Uninstall the MP Drivers following the procedure described in [Deleting the Unnecessary MP Drivers](#) and reinstall them from the Setup CD-ROM or the Canon website.
- **"Could not print Application name - File name"**  
Try printing again once the current job is complete.

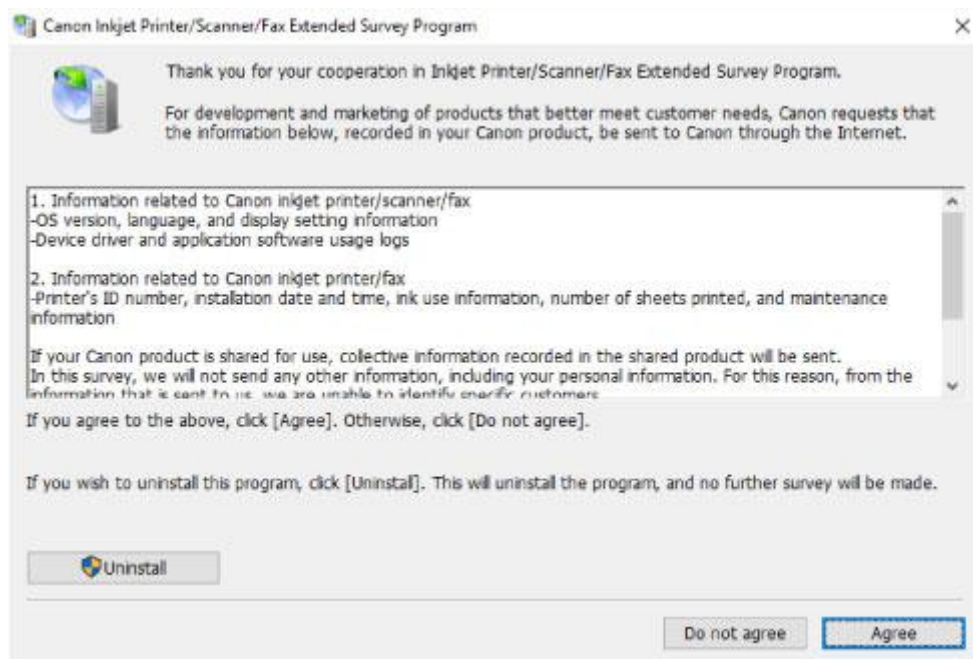


## Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program Screen Is Displayed (Windows)

### 

If the Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program is installed, a screen appears asking for permission to send the printer and application usage information every month for about ten years.

Read the information on the screen and follow the instructions below.



- **If you agree to participate in survey program:**

Click **Agree** and follow the on-screen instructions. The printer usage information is sent via the Internet. Once you have completed the procedure, the information is subsequently sent automatically and the confirmation screen does not reappear.

#### **Note**

- When the information is being sent, a warning such as an Internet security message may appear. Make sure the program name is "IJPLMUI.exe" and allow it.
- If you clear **Send automatically from the next time** check box, the information will not be sent automatically from next time and a confirmation screen will appear at the time of the next survey. To send the information automatically, see [Changing confirmation screen setting](#).

- **If you do not agree to participate in survey program:**

Click **Do not agree**. The confirmation screen closes and the survey is skipped. The confirmation screen will reappear one month later.

- **To uninstall Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program:**

To uninstall the Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program, click **Uninstall** and follow the on-screen instructions.

• **Changing confirmation screen setting:**

1. Make the following settings.

- In Windows 10, right-click **Start** button and select **Programs and Features**.
- In Windows 8.1 or Windows 8, select **Control Panel** from **Settings** charm on **Desktop** > **Programs** > **Programs and Features**.
- In Windows 7, or Windows Vista, select **Start** menu > **Control Panel** > **Programs** > **Programs and Features**.

»»» **Note**

- A confirmation/warning dialog box may appear when installing, uninstalling or starting up software.

This dialog box appears when administrative rights are required to perform a task.

If you are logged in on an account with administrator privileges, follow the on-screen instructions.

2. Select **Canon Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program**.

3. Select **Change**.

If you select **Yes** after you have followed the on-screen instructions, the confirmation screen will appear at the time of the next survey.

If you select **No**, the information will be sent automatically.

»»» **Note**

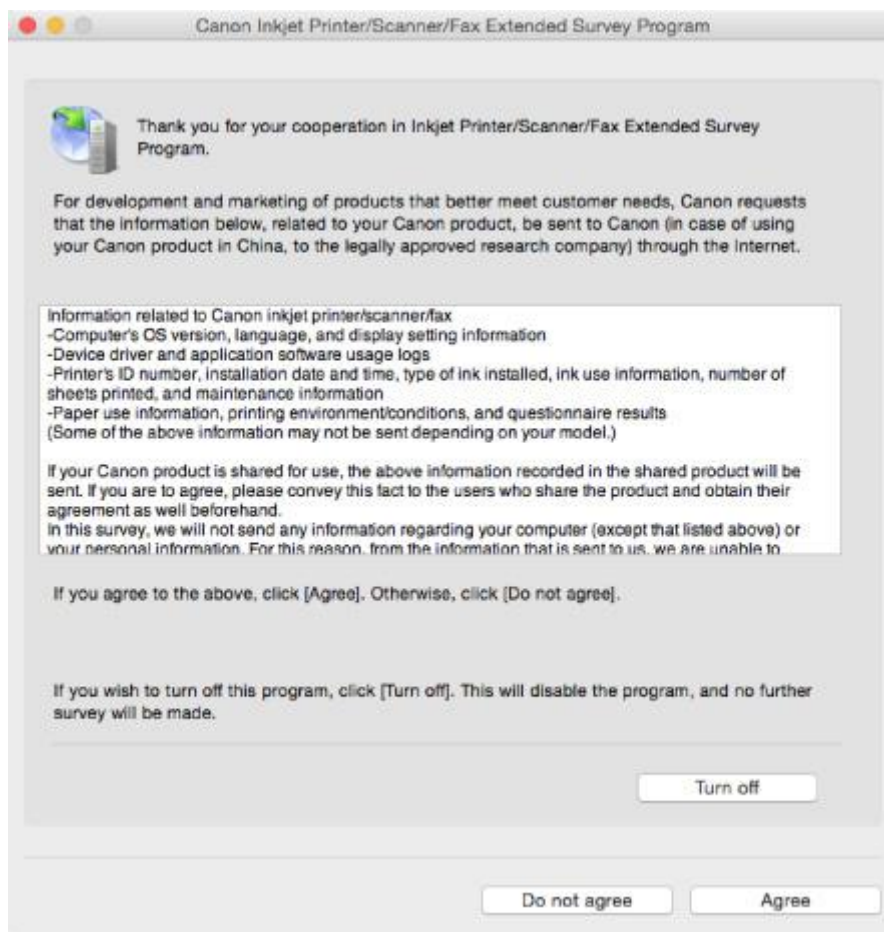
- If you select **Uninstall**, the Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program is uninstalled. Follow the on-screen instructions.

## **Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program Icon Appears (Mac OS)**

### **A**

If the Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program is installed, the printer and application software usage information is sent every month for about ten years. The **Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program** icon appears in the Dock when it is time to send the printer usage information.

Click the icon, read the information that appears, and then follow the instructions below.



- **If you agree to participate in survey program:**

Click **Agree** and follow the on-screen instructions. The printer usage information is sent via the Internet. Once you have completed the procedure, the information is subsequently sent automatically and the confirmation screen does not reappear.

➤➤➤ **Note**

- If you clear the **Send automatically from the next time** check box, the information will not be sent automatically the next time and the **Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program** icon will appear in the Dock at the time of the next survey.

- **If you do not agree to participate in survey program:**

Click **Do not agree**. The confirmation screen closes and the survey is skipped. The confirmation screen will reappear one month later.

- **To stop sending the information:**

Click **Turn off**. This stops the Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program, and information is not sent. To resume the survey, see [Changing setting](#).

- **To uninstall Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program:**

1. Stop Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program.

■ [Changing setting](#):

2. Select **Applications** from **Go** menu of Finder, double-click the **Canon Utilities** folder and **Inkjet Extended Survey Program** folder.
3. Move **Canon Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program.app** to **Trash**.
4. Restart computer.  
Empty **Trash** and restart your computer.

- **Changing setting:**

To display the confirmation screen every time the printer usage information is sent or to resume surveying, follow the procedure below.

1. Select **Applications** from **Go** menu of Finder, double-click the **Canon Utilities** folder and **Inkjet Extended Survey Program** folder.
2. Double-click **Canon Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program** icon.



- **Do not display the confirmation screen when information is sent:**

If the check box is selected, the information will be sent automatically.

If the check box is not selected, **Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program** icon will appear in the Dock at the time of the next survey. Click the icon and follow the on-screen instructions.

- **Turn off/Turn on** button:

Click the **Turn off** button to stop the Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program.

Click the **Turn on** button to restart the Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program.

## List of Support Code for Error

Support code appears on your computer screen when errors occur.

A "support code" is an error number, and appears along with an error message.

When an error occurs, check the support code displayed on the computer screen and take the appropriate action in response.

### Support Code Appears on Computer Screen

- **1000 to 1ZZZ**

[1000](#) [1200](#) [1203](#) [1300](#) [1401](#) 1403

[1485](#) [1682](#) 1684 [1686](#) [1688](#) [168A](#)

[1700](#) 1701 [1890](#)

- **2000 to 2ZZZ**

[2900](#) [2901](#)

- **4000 to 4ZZZ**

4100 [4102](#) [4103](#)

- **5000 to 5ZZZ**

[5011](#) [5012](#) 5050 [5100](#) [5200](#) 5400

[5B00](#) 5B01

- **6000 to 6ZZZ**

[6000](#) 6500 6800 6801 6900 6901

6902 6910 6911 6930 6931 6932

6933 6936 6937 6938 6940 6941

6942 6943 6944 6945 6946

- **A000 to ZZZZ**

B201 B202 B203 B204

For paper jam support codes, see also [List of Support Code for Error \(Paper Jams\)](#).

## List of Support Code for Error (Paper Jams)

If paper jams, remove it following the appropriate procedure as shown below.

- If you can see the jammed paper at the paper output slot or the rear tray:

- [1300](#)

- If the paper tears and you cannot remove it from the paper output slot or from the rear tray:

- [Paper Is Jammed inside Printer](#)

- Cases other than above:

- Other Cases

## 1300

### Cause

Paper is jammed in paper output slot or in rear tray.

### What to Do

Remove the jammed paper following the procedure below.

1. Slowly pull out paper, either from paper output slot or from rear tray, whichever is easier.

Hold the paper with both hands, and pull it out slowly so as not to tear it.



#### ►► Note

- If you cannot pull out the paper, turn the printer back on without pulling forcibly. The paper may be ejected automatically.
- If paper becomes jammed during printing and you need to turn off the printer to remove it, press the **Stop** button to stop the printing before you turn off the printer.
- If the paper tears and you cannot remove the jammed paper from the paper output slot or the rear tray, remove the paper from inside the printer.

#### ■ [Paper Is Jammed inside Printer](#)

2. Reload paper and press printer's **Black** or **Color** button.

The printer resumes printing. Reprint the page you were printing if it was not printed properly due to the paper jam.

If you turned off the printer in step 1, the print data that was sent to the printer is erased. Redo the printing.

#### ►► Note

- When reloading the paper, make sure you are using suitable paper and loading it correctly.
- We recommend using paper sizes other than A5 to print documents with photos or graphics. A5 paper may curl and jam as it leaves the printer.

If the measures above do not solve the problem, contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

## Paper Is Jammed inside Printer

If the jammed paper tears and you cannot remove the paper either from the paper output slot or from the rear tray, or if the jammed paper remains inside the printer, remove the paper following the instructions below.

### ▶▶▶ Note

- If paper becomes jammed during printing and you need to turn off the printer to remove it, press the **Stop** button to stop the printing before you turn off the printer.

1. Turn off printer and unplug it.
2. Retract paper output tray and open cover.



### ▶▶▶ Important

- Do not touch clear film (A).



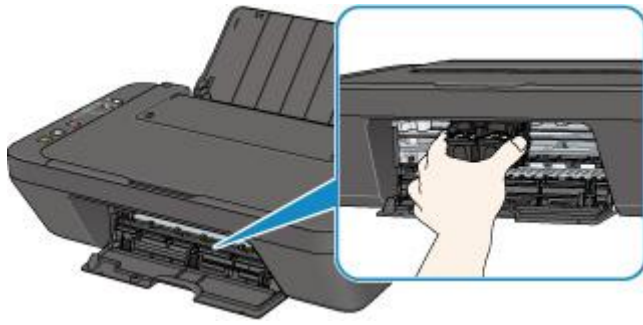
If you soil or scratch the clear film by touching it with paper or your hand, it could damage the printer.

3. Check if jammed paper is under FINE cartridge holder.

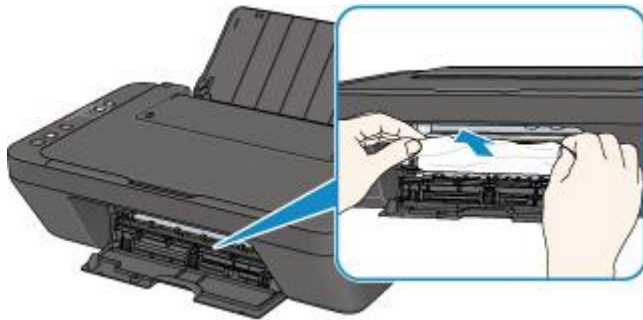
If the jammed paper is under the FINE cartridge holder, move the FINE cartridge holder to the far right or left, whichever makes it easier to remove the paper.

When moving the FINE cartridge holder, hold the FINE cartridge holder and slide it slowly to the far right or left.

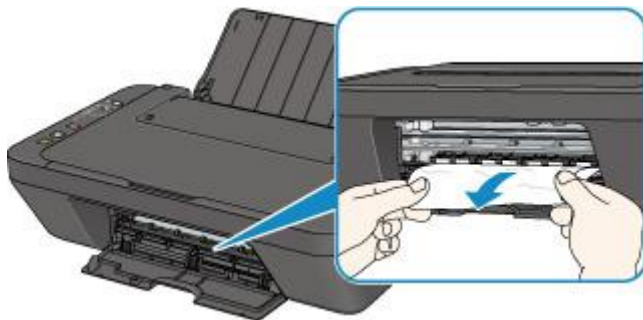




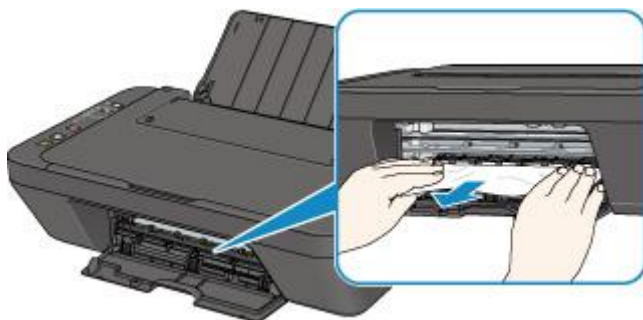
4. Hold jammed paper firmly in both hands.



If the paper is rolled up, pull out it.



5. Slowly pull out paper, so as not to tear it.

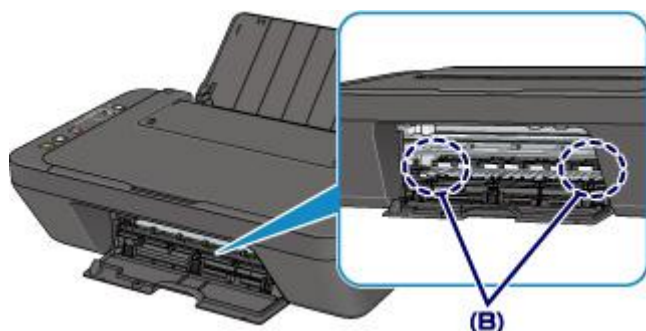


6. Make sure all jammed paper is removed.

If the paper tears when you pull out it, a bit of paper may remain in the printer. Check the following and remove any remaining paper.

- Any paper left under the FINE cartridge holder?
- Any small bits of paper left in the printer?

- Any paper left in the left and right empty spaces (B) in the printer?



7. Close cover.

All jobs in the print queue are canceled. Redo the printing.

**▶▶▶ Note**

- When reloading the paper, make sure you are using suitable paper and loading it correctly. If a paper jam message appears on your computer screen when you resume printing after removing all the jammed paper, there may be some paper still inside the printer. Check the printer again for any remaining bits of paper.

If the measures above do not solve the problem, contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

# 1000

## Cause

Possible causes include the following.

- There is no paper in the rear tray.
- Paper is not loaded properly.

## What to Do

Take the corresponding actions below.

- Load paper in the rear tray.
- Align the paper guide with the paper stack when you load paper.

After carrying out the above measures, press the printer's **Black** or **Color** button.

## ▶▶ Note

- To cancel printing, press the printer's **Stop** button.

## **1200**

### **Cause**

Cover is open.

### **What to Do**

Close the cover and wait for a while.

Do not close it while you are replacing a FINE cartridge.

## 1203

### Cause

Cover is opened during printing.

### What to Do

If paper remains inside the printer, slowly pull out the paper with both hands and close the cover.

Press the printer's **Black** or **Color** button to resolve the error.

The printer ejects one blank sheet of paper and resumes printing from the next paper.

The printer will not reprint the page that was printed when the cover is opened. Retry printing.

### ►► Important

- Do not open or close the cover during printing, as this can damage the printer.

## **1401**

### **Cause**

FINE cartridge is not installed.

### **What to Do**

Install the FINE cartridge.

If the error is not resolved, the FINE cartridge may be damaged. Contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

## 1485

### Cause

Appropriate ink cartridge is not installed.

### What to Do

Printing cannot be executed because the ink cartridge is not compatible with this machine.

Install the appropriate ink cartridge.

If you want to cancel printing, press the machine's **Stop** button.

## **1682**

### **Cause**

FINE cartridge cannot be recognized.

### **What to Do**

Replace the FINE cartridge.

If the error is not resolved, the FINE cartridge may be damaged. Contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.



## 1686

### Cause

The ink may have run out.

### What to Do

The function for detecting the remaining ink level will be disabled since the ink level cannot be correctly detected.

If you want to continue printing without this function, press the machine's **Stop** button for at least 5 seconds.

Canon recommends to use new genuine Canon cartridges in order to obtain optimum qualities.

Please be advised that Canon shall not be liable for any malfunction or trouble caused by continuation of printing under the ink out condition.

## 1688

### Cause

The ink has run out.

### What to Do

Replace the ink cartridge and close the cover.

If printing is in progress and you want to continue printing, press the machine's **Stop** button for at least 5 seconds with the ink cartridge installed. Then printing can continue under the ink out condition.

The function for detecting the remaining ink level will be disabled.

Replace the empty ink cartridge immediately after the printing. The resulting print quality is not satisfactory, if printing is continued under the ink out condition.

## 168A

### Cause

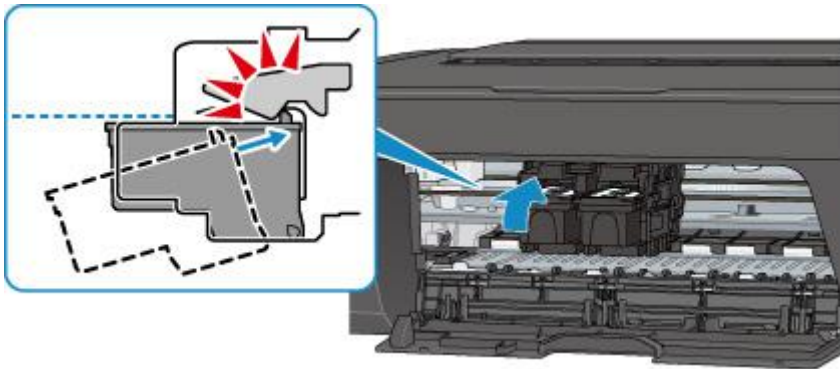
FINE cartridge is not installed properly, or FINE cartridge not compatible with this printer is installed.

### What to Do

Retract the output tray extension and the paper output tray, open the cover, and then remove the FINE cartridges.

Make sure the FINE cartridge compatible with the printer is installed.

Then install the FINE cartridges again. Push up the FINE cartridge until it clicks into place.



After installing, close the cover.

## 1700

### Cause

Ink absorber is almost full.

### What to Do

Press the printer's **Black** or **Color** button to continue printing. Contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

## 1890

### Cause

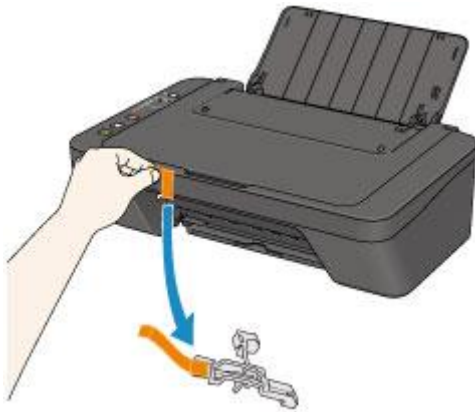
Protective material or tape may still be attached to FINE cartridge holder.

### What to Do

Make sure the protective material and tape have been removed from the FINE cartridge holder.

If the protective material or tape is still there, retract the output tray extension and the paper output tray to remove it.

Pull down the tape to remove the protective material.



If the cover is open, close it.

If this does not solve the problem, contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

## 2900

### Cause

Scanning print head alignment sheet failed.

### What to Do

Press the printer's **Black** or **Color** button and follow the instructions below.

- Make sure the print head alignment sheet is set in the correct position and orientation on the platen glass.
- Make sure the platen glass and the print head alignment sheet are not dirty.
- Make sure the loaded paper is correct.

For automatic print head alignment, load A4 or Letter-sized plain paper.

- Make sure the print head nozzle is not clogged.

Check the print head condition by printing the nozzle check pattern.

If the error is not resolved, perform manual print head alignment.

## 2901

### Cause

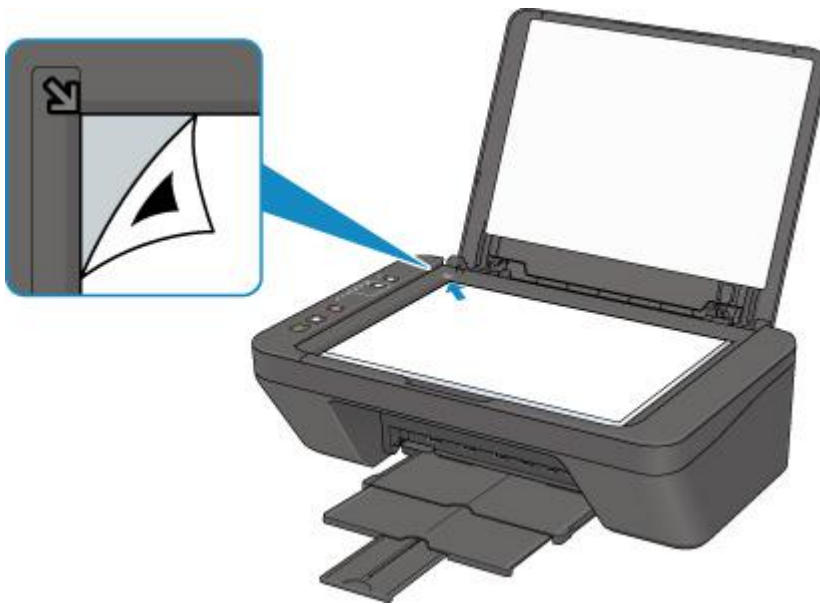
Print head alignment pattern has been printed and printer is waiting to scan sheet.

### What to Do

Scan the printed alignment pattern.

1. Load print head alignment sheet on platen glass.

Place the printed side down and align the mark  in the upper left corner of the sheet with the alignment mark .



2. Slowly close the document cover and press printer's **Black** or **Color** button.

The printer starts scanning the print head alignment sheet, and automatically adjusts the print head position.

## 4102

### Cause

Media type and paper size are not set correctly.

### What to Do

Press the printer's **Stop** button to cancel printing, change the media type or paper size setting, and then redo the printing.

- When the media type is set to Photo Paper Plus Glossy II:  
Set the paper size to 4" x 6" (10 x 15 cm) or 5" x 7" (13 x 18 cm).
- When the media type is set to Glossy Photo Paper:  
Set the paper size to 4" x 6" (10 x 15 cm).
- When the media type is set to Envelope:  
Set the paper size to Envelope Com 10 or Envelope DL.



## 4103

### **Cause**

Cannot perform printing with current print settings.

### **What to Do**

Press the printer's **Stop** button to cancel printing.

Then change the print settings and retry printing.

## **5011**

### **Cause**

Printer error has occurred.

### **What to Do**

Turn off the printer and unplug it.

Plug in the printer again and turn it back on.

If this does not solve the problem, contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

## **5012**

### **Cause**

Printer error has occurred.

### **What to Do**

Turn off the printer and unplug it.

Plug in the printer again and turn it back on.

If this does not solve the problem, contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

## 5100

### Cause

Printer error has occurred.

### What to Do

Cancel printing and turn off the printer.

Check the following:

- Make sure FINE cartridge holder motion is not impeded by stabilizer, jammed paper, etc.  
Remove any impediment.
- Make sure the FINE cartridges are properly installed.  
Push up the FINE cartridge until it clicks into place.

Turn the printer back on.

If this does not solve the problem, contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

### ▶▶▶ Important

- When clearing an impediment to FINE cartridge holder motion, be careful not to touch clear film (A).



If you soil or scratch the clear film by touching it with paper or your hand, it could damage the printer.

## **5200**

### **Cause**

Printer error has occurred.

### **What to Do**

Turn off the printer and unplug it.

Plug in the printer again and turn it back on.

If this does not solve the problem, contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

## **5B00**

### **Cause**

Printer error has occurred.

### **What to Do**

Contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

## **6000**

### **Cause**

Printer error has occurred.

### **What to Do**

Turn off the printer and unplug it.

Plug in the printer again and turn it back on.

If this does not solve the problem, contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.